

Salesforce Billing Developer Guide

Version 64.0, Summer '25





CONTENTS

Chapter 1: Salesforce Billing Fields on Standard Objects
Billing Fields on Account
Billing Fields on Asset
Billing Fields on Consumption Schedule
Billing Fields on Finance Balance Snapshot
Billing Fields on Finance Transaction
Billing Fields on Order
Billing Fields on Order Product
Billing Fields on Product2
Chapter 2: Salesforce Billing Custom Objects
blngAccountBalanceSnapshotc
blng_Accountibalanceshapshoi_c blng_AgingBuckets_c
blng_BalanceSnapShotRun_c 39
blng_BalanceSnapShotSchedulerc 42
blng_BillingBatchJob_c 44
blng_BillingPrefix_c 47
blng_BillingRule_c 48
blng BillingSchedule c 52
blng_BillingTransaction_c 56
blng_BillingTreatment_c 60
blng_CreditNote_c 64
blng_CreditNoteAllocation_c 73
blng CreditNoteLine c
blng_DebitNote_c 95
blng_DebitNoteLine_c 105
blng_FinanceBook_c 122
blng_FinancePeriod_c 124
blng_GLAccount_c 128
blng_GLRule_c 130
blng GLTreatment c 132
blng_Invoice_c 135
blng_InvoiceLine_c 148
blng InvoicePlan c
blng_InvoicePlanLine_c 169
blng InvoiceRun c
blng_InvoiceScheduler_c 176
blng_LegalEntity_c 181
hlng Payment c

Contents

blngPaymentAllocationDebitNoteLinec	198
blngPaymentAllocationInvoicec	202
blngPaymentAllocationInvoiceLinec	205
blngPaymentAuthorizationc	209
blngPaymentGatewayc	214
blngPaymentGatewayConfigc	219
blngPaymentMappingc	220
blngPaymentMethodc	224
blngPaymentRunc	235
blngPaymentSchedulerc	
blngPaymentTermsc	244
blngPaymentTransactionc	245
blngRefundc	256
blngRefundLineCreditNoteLinec	262
blngRefundLinePaymentc	268
blngRevenueAdjustmentc	273
blngRevenueAdjustmentLinec	278
blngRevenueAgreementc	282
blngRevenueDistributionMethodc	287
blngRevenueRecognitionRulec	29
$blng_Revenue Recognition Treatment_c \dots \dots$	293
blngRevenueSchedulec	298
blngRevenueTransactionc	309
blng_SubInvoiceLine_c	317
blngTaxConfigc	320
blngTaxIntegrationc	32
blngTaxRatec	325
blngTaxRulec	329
blngTaxTreatmentc	33
blng_Usage_c	334
blngUsageSummaryc	34
Chapter 3: Salesforce Billing Standard Objects	353
Chapter 4: Salesforce Billing Developer Guides & Lightning Components	354
Salesforce Billing Payment Gateway Developer Guide	
Get Started with Salesforce Billing Payment Gateway API	355
Payment Gateway Class Reference	380
Salesforce Billing Tax Integration Developer Guide	456
Get Started With Tax Integration API	456
Tax Integration Core Classes	458
Revenue Recognition Service Developer Guide	470
Get Started with the Revenue Recognition Service	470
Revenue Recognition Service Setup	472

Contents

Revenue Recognition Service Use Cases
Hosted Card Payments Lightning Component
Attributes for the Card Hosted Payments Component
Guidelines for the Hosted Card Payments Lightning Component
HostedPaymentPageTransactionAPI Class
REST API for Converting Invoice Lines with Negative Balances
Set Up Standalone Orders with API
Required Configurations for Types of Standalone Order Products
Salesforce Billing Apex Reference
InvoiceAPI Class
Index

CHAPTER 1 Salesforce Billing Fields on Standard Objects

In this chapter ...

- Billing Fields on Account
- Billing Fields on Asset
- Billing Fields on Consumption Schedule
- Billing Fields on Finance Balance Snapshot
- Billing Fields on Finance Transaction
- Billing Fields on Order
- Billing Fields on Order Product
- Billing Fields on Product2

Salesforce Billing has added custom fields to some standard Salesforce objects to represent information specific to billing. These fields are available only in orgs where the Salesforce Billing managed package is installed.



Note: The documentation in this developer guide is for the Salesforce Billing managed package. If you're looking for developer documentation for Revenue Cloud, see Get Started with Revenue Cloud Developer Resources.

Billing Fields on Account

Standard and custom fields extend the standard Account object for use in Billing to represent information about accounts.

Fields

Field	Details
blngBillToContactc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description Primary contact for the billed account.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngBillToContactr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To Contact
CustomerProfileIdc	Туре
	string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description Authorize.Net payment gateways require this value to communicate with Salesforce Billing. For accounts with Authorize.Net payment gateways, Salesforce Billing creates a customer profile ID when a user selects Save for future use in the Payment Center. It also creates a profile ID when a user creates a credit card payment method on the account. Salesforce Billing then passes the ID to Authorize.Net when it communicates with the payment gateway.
blng_DefaultPaymentType	^С Туре
	string
	Properties

Description

Used in payment runs. A payment run picks up an invoice if the run and the invoice have matching Default Payment Type values. Salesforce Billing provides two ways to set Default Payment Type on the invoice:

 Relate a payment method to the account and select the payment method's Autopay field. The account's default payment type inherits the value of the payment method's

Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Type field. All the account's invoices inherit the account's default payment type. Use this setup to quickly set a default payment type for all of the account's invoices.
	 Enter a payment method in the invoice's Override Autopay Payment Method field. The invoice's default payment type ignores the account's payment method and inherits the Type value from the Override Autopay Payment Method instead. Use this setup to temporarily change the payment method used for a specific invoice.

Object Reference for the Salesforce Platform: Account

Billing Fields on Asset

Standard and custom fields extend the standard Asset object for use in Billing to represent information about assets.

Fields

Field	Details
blng_InvoiceLinePalanceUpdated_c	Type dateTime
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The date and time when balances of the invoice lines related to the asset were last updated.
blng_InvoiceLineBalance_c	Type currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The sum of balances on all the posted invoice lines related to the asset.

SEE ALSO:

Object Reference for the Salesforce Platform: Asset

Billing Fields on Consumption Schedule

Standard and custom fields extend the standard Consumption Schedule object for use in Billing to represent information about consumption schedules.

Field	Details
blngBillingRulec	Туре
	reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description This rule is used to invoice usage summaries related to the consumption schedule.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngBillingRuler
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngBillingRuler
blng_RevenueRecognitionRule_c	Type reference
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description This rule is used to recognize the revenue of usage summaries based on the summary's related revenue recognition rule.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngRevenueRecognitionRuler
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngRevenueRecognitionRuler
blngTaxRulec	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description This rule is used to tax usage summary invoice lines based on the summary's related tax rule.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngTaxRuler

Field	Details	
	Relationship Type Lookup	
	Refers To blngTaxRuler	

Object Reference for the Salesforce Platform: ConsumptionSchedule

Billing Fields on Finance Balance Snapshot

Standard and custom fields extend the standard Finance Balance Snapshot object for use in Billing to represent information about finance balance snapshots.

Field	Details
blngCreditGLAccountc	Type reference
	Properties Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The Credit General Ledger account related to the finance transaction.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngCreditGLAccountr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngGLAccountc
blngDebitGLAccountc	Type reference
	Properties Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The Debit General Ledger account related to the finance transaction.
	This field is a relationship field.

Field	Details
	Relationship Name blngDebitGLAccountr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngGLAccountc
blngFinanceBookc	Type reference
	Properties Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The finance book related to the finance transaction.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngFinanceBookr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngFinanceBookc
blngFinancePeriodc	Type reference
	Properties Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The finance period related to the finance transaction.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngFinancePeriodr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngFinancePeriodc
blngGLRulec	Type reference
	Properties Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The General Ledger (GL) rule used to determine the GL accounts for the finance transaction.

Field	Details
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngGLRuler
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngGLRulec
blngGLTreatmentc	Type reference
	Properties Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The General Ledger (GL) treatment used to determine the GL accounts for the finance transaction.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngGLTreatmentr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngGLTreatmentc

Billing Fields on Finance Transaction

Standard and custom fields extend the standard Finance Transaction object for use in Billing to represent information about finance transactions.

Field	Details
blngCreditGLAccountc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The Credit General Ledger account related to the finance transaction. This field is a relationship field.

Field	Details
	Relationship Name
	blngCreditGLAccountr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngGLAccountc
blngDebitGLAccountc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The Debit General Ledger account related to the finance transaction.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngDebitGLAccountr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngGLAccountc
blngFinanceBookc	Туре
	reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The finance book related to the finance transaction.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngFinanceBookr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngFinanceBookc
blngFinancePeriodc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The finance period related to the finance transaction.

Field	Details
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name
	blngFinancePeriodr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngFinancePeriodc
blngGLRulec	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The General Ledger (GL) rule used to determine the GL accounts for the finance transaction.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngGLRuler
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngGLRulec
blngGLTreatmentc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The General Ledger (GL) treatment used to determine the GL accounts for the finance transaction.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngGLTreatmentr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngGLTreatmentc

Billing Fields on Order

Standard and custom fields extend the standard Order object for use in Billing to represent information about orders.

Field	Details
blngBillNowc	Type
	boolean
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Creates an invoice for all order products in the order.
blngBilledAmountwithouttaxc	туре
	currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The total amount that has been billed for all the order products in the order, excluding tax. This amount is equal to the sum of Billed Amount (without tax) values of all the order products.
	This field is a calculated field.
blngBilledTaxc	Туре
	currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The total amount of taxes that have been billed for all the order products in the order. This amount is equal to the sum of all Tax Amount values of all the order products.
	This field is a calculated field.
blngBillingAccountc	Туре
	reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description This field isn't populated by default. If a user or process populates the Billing Account field before invoicing the order, the invoice's Account field inherits this value instead of the order's Account field.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngBillingAccountr
	Relationship Type Lookup

Field	Details
	Refers To Account
blng_BillingDayOfMonth_c	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The day of the month when the order's products are billed. Possible values are from 1 to 31.
blng_CanceledBillings_c	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The total amount that was canceled and won't be billed for all the order products in the order. This amount is equal to the sum of all Canceled Billing Amount (without tax) values of all the order products. This field is a calculated field.
blngInvoiceBatchc	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description Groups orders for invoicing during invoice run evaluation. Null values are assigned to the same invoice run.
blngPendingBillingsc	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The total amount that hasn't been billed for all the order products in the order. This amount is equal to the sum of all Pending Billing Amount (without tax) values of all the order products.
blngTotalBillingc	This field is a calculated field. Type
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort

Field	Details
	Description
	The total amount that has been billed for all the order products on the order, including tax. This amount is equal to the sum of all Billed Amount (without tax) values and all Billed Tax values of all the order products.
	This field is a calculated field.

Object Reference for the Salesforce Platform: Order

Billing Fields on Order Product

Standard and custom fields extend the standard OrderProduct object for use in Billing to represent information about order products.

Field	Details
blng_AllocatedRevenueAmount_c	Type currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The revenue amount that has been allocated for the order product.
blngAssetc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The asset for the order product that's used with the Customer Asset Lifecycle Management (CALM) service.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngAssetr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To Asset

Field Details blng BillThroughDateOverride c Type date **Properties** Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update Description The end date of the next invoice line created from the order product. For the upcoming billing cycle, this field overrides the standard invoice line end date calculated by using the charge to date and billing frequency. Salesforce Billing clears this field after it creates the invoice line. blng_BillableUnitPrice__c Type currency **Properties** Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update Description When you order a quote, Salesforce CPQ calculates the billable unit price for one-time and recurring order products on the order. The formula for this value is [(Amount / Prorate Multiplier) / Pricing Frequency] * Billing Frequency This field is a read-only field. blng_BilledAmountwithouttax_c Type currency **Properties** Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update Description The sum of amounts of all the invoice lines for the order product, excluding tax. blng BilledTax c Type currency **Properties** Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update Description The sum of taxes of all the invoice lines for the order product. blng_BillingAccount__c Type reference **Properties** Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description The name of the billing account that the order is related to. You can enter the account name or select the account.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngBillingAccountr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To Account
blngBillingGLRulec	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The billing rule for including billing transactions in an external general ledger.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngBillingGLRuler
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngGLRulec
blng_BillingGLTreatment_c	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The billing treatment for including billing transactions in an external general ledger.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngBillingGLTreatmentr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngGLTreatmentc
blng BillingRule c	Туре

Field	Details
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The billing rule that's assigned to the order product.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngBillingRuler
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngBillingRulec
blngBillingTreatmentc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The billing treatment assigned to the order product.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngBillingTreatmentr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngBillingTreatmentc
blngCanceledBillingsc	Type currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The total balance subtracted from the order product due to cancellations or swaps.
blng_FinanceBookAccounting_c	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The finance book for the order product. This field is auto-populated based on the billing treatment for the order product.
	This field is a relationship field.

Field	Details
	Relationship Name
	blngFinanceBookAccountingr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngFinanceBookc
blngGroupIdc	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The external ID of the invoice group.
blngGroupQuantityc	Type double
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The quantity of order products for the invoice group.
blngGroupUnitPricec	Type currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The billable unit price for the invoice group.
blngHoldBillingc	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description Specifies whether invoice schedulers evaluate an active order product for billing.
	Possible values are:
	 No: Invoice schedulers evaluate an active order product
	 Yes: Invoice schedulers don't evaluate an active order product
	The default value is No.
blngIncludedUsagec	Type double

Details Field

Properties

Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update

Description

Salesforce Billing provides this amount of usage for free before charging. For example, if your usage order product has an included quantity of 10 and its usage for one billing period sum to 12, Salesforce Billing invoices only 2 quantities of usage from the usage summary.

The included usage is available only for usage products using price schedules.

blng InvoiceGroupId c

Type

string

Properties

Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Description

After Salesforce Billing groups your order products by their invoice group values, it assigns each group a unique ID.

This field is a read-only field.

blng__InvoiceGrouping__c Type

multipicklist

Properties

Create, Filter, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Update

Description

Use invoice groups to split an account's charges into multiple invoices based on user-defined values. When an invoice scheduler picks up its order products during an invoice run, it looks at each order product's invoice group value. It then groups those order products into invoices by their respective value. You can set any number of invoice group values on an order product.

Valid values are:

- Contract Number
- Invoice Group ID
- Legal Entity
- Order
- Order PO Number
- Separate Invoice

blng InvoiceRunProcessingStatus c

Type

picklist

Properties

Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update

Description

The status of an order product as the invoice run evaluates it.

Valid values are:

Field	Details
	 Completed: The invoice run created and posted an invoice line for the order product. The order product doesn't have any more invoice lines.
	• Error: The invoice run encountered an error while trying to invoice the order product. For more information, review the invoice scheduler's error log.
	• In Progress: The invoice run has created an invoice line but hasn't posted it yet.
	 Pending Billing: A future invoice run creates another invoice line from the order product during its upcoming billing period.
	• Will Not Invoice: The invoice run evaluated the order product and determined that it's not invoiceable.
blng_InvoiceRunStartDate_c	Type dateTime
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The start date and time of the invoice run that's evaluating the order product.
blng_InvoiceRunStatusIndex_c	Type string
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The stage of the invoice run that's evaluating the order product for billing. Users must not update this system field. This field is automatically updated with a text representation of the picklist value when the Invoice Run Processing Status field is updated.
blngInvoiceRunc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The invoice run that's evaluating the order product for billing.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngInvoiceRunr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngInvoiceRunc
blngLastChargeToDatec	Type date

Details Field

Properties

Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Description

The date the order product was billed through. This date is equal to the end date of the last invoice line for the order product. Salesforce Billing sets this field automatically and it's used in the calculation of invoice charge amounts.

This field is a read-only field.

blng LastInvoiceTargetDate c

Type

date

Properties

Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Description

The target date of the most recent invoice run that generated an invoice line for the order product. Salesforce Billing sets this field automatically and it's used for auditing purposes.

This field is a read-only field.

blng_legalEntityReference_c Type

string

Properties

Create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update

Description

The legal entity that covers the order product. When you bill the order product, Salesforce CPQ uses the legal entity to apply billing rules, tax rules, revenue recognitions rules, and their related treatments.

blng LegalEntity c

Type

reference

Properties

Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Description

The legal entity that covers the order product. When you bill the order product, Salesforce CPQ uses the legal entity to apply billing rules, tax rules, revenue recognitions rules, and their related treatments.

This field is a relationship field.

Relationship Name

blng__LegalEntity__r

Relationship Type

Lookup

Refers To

blng__LegalEntity__c

Field Details

blng_NextBillingDate_c $_{\mathbf{T}}$

Type

date

Properties

Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Description

The next date that Salesforce Billing evaluates and prices the order product for billing. This field is a system field that users and Salesforce admins mustn't change.

blng__NextChargeDate__c

Type

date

Properties

Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Description

The next date that Salesforce Billing will charge the order product. Salesforce Billing sets this field based on the order product's billing frequency, billing type, and date of invoice.

This field is a read-only field.

blng OverrideBillableUnitPrice c

Type

currency

Properties

Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update

Description

A new billable unit price for unactivated and uninvoiced evergreen subscription order products. This field is useful if you're migrating an evergreen subscription order product from outside Salesforce Billing. You can define an Override Billable Unit Price rather than rerun calculations in Salesforce Billing to determine the billable unit price.

blng OvernideInitialRevenueIndDate_c

Type

date

Properties

Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Description

The end date of revenue recognition. This controls the end date of any revenue schedules created from the order product.

blng OverrideInitialRevenueStartDate c

Type

date

Properties

Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Description

The start date of revenue recognition. This controls the start date of any revenue schedules created from the order product.

Field	Details
blng_OverrideNextBillingDate_c	Type date
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description A one-time custom billing date that invoice schedulers use instead of the Next Billing Date field when evaluating order products for invoicing. Salesforce Billing erases this field's value after invoicing the order product.
blngPendingBillingsc	Type currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The total amount remaining to be billed from the order product, excluding tax.
blng_RevenueExpectedAmount_c	Type currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The sum of expected revenue impact of all the credit note lines of the order product.
blng_RevenueLiabilityAmount_c	Type currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The sum of revenue liability of all the credit note lines of the order product.
blng_RevenueMostLikelyAmount_c	Type currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The sum of most likely revenue impact of all the credit note lines of the order product.
	This field is deprecated from Summer '18.
blng_RevenueRecognitionRule_c	Type reference

Field	Details
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The revenue recognition rule that defines whether Salesforce Billing creates a revenue schedule and applies revenue recognition treatments to the order product. This field is a relationship field.
	This field is a relationship field. Relationship Name blngRevenueRecognitionRuler
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngRevenueRecognitionRulec
blng_RevenueScheduleStatus_c	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The status of recognizing the revenue for the order product.
	Valid values are:
	• Complete
	• Error
	• Queued
blngTaxCityc	Туре
	string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The city of the address that Salesforce Billing uses to calculate tax for the order product.
blngTaxCountryc	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The country of the address that Salesforce Billing uses to calculate tax for the order product.
blngTaxCountyc	Type string

Field	Details
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The county of the address that Salesforce Billing uses to calculate tax for the order product.
blngTaxErrorMessagec	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description A message indicating that Salesforce Billing couldn't calculate tax for the order product.
blngTaxGLRulec	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The tax rule for recording tax transactions in an external general ledger.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngTaxGLRuler
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngGLRulec
blng_TaxGLTreatment_c	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The tax treatment for recording tax transactions in an external general ledger.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngTaxGLTreatmentr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngGLTreatmentc

Field	Details
blng_TaxPercentageApplied_c	Туре
	percent
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The amount of tax that Salesforce CPQ applied to the order product based on your tax engine's tax calculations.
blngTaxRulec	Туре
	reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The tax rule that's assigned to the order product. Tax rules and their treatments define how Salesforce Billing processes tax for your transactions.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngTaxRuler
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngTaxRulec
blngTaxStatec	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The state of the address that Salesforce Billing uses to calculate tax for the order product. This field overrides the state inherited from the account.
blngTaxStatusc	Туре
	picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The tax calculation status for the order product.
	Valid values are:
	• Completed
	• Copied
	• Error

Field	Details
	• Processing
	• Queued
	• Warning
blngTaxStreet2c	Type string
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The street of the address that Salesforce Billing uses to calculate tax for the order product. This field overrides the street inherited from the account.
blngTaxStreetc	Type string
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The street of the address that Salesforce Billing uses to calculate tax for the order product. This field overrides the street inherited from the account.
blngTaxTreatmentc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The tax treatment assigned to the order product. Tax rules and their treatments define how Salesforce Billing processes tax for your transactions.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngTaxTreatmentr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngTaxTreatmentc
blngTaxZipCodec	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The postal code of the address that Salesforce Billing uses to calculate tax for the order product. This field overrides the postal code inherited from the account.

Field	Details
blngTerminatedBillingsc	Туре
	currency
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The amount available to be canceled from the order product, which can't be more than the pending billing amount.
blngTotalBillingc	Туре
	currency
	Properties
	Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The sum of all invoice lines, including tax, for the order product. The formula for calculating this amount is
	blng_BilledAmountwithouttax_c + blng_BilledTax_c
blngUniqueIdc	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The unique ID of the order product.
blng_UsageFloorQuantity_c	Type
	double
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The minimum usage quantity that Salesforce Billing charges for, even if there's little or no usage. For example, if your order product has a usage floor quantity of 10, and the usages sum to 7, Salesforce Billing invoices for a usage quantity of 10. The included usage is available only for usage products using price schedules.

Object Reference for the Salesforce Platform: OrderItem

Billing Fields on Product2

Standard and custom fields extend the standard Product2 object for use in Billing to represent information about products.

Fields

Field	Details
blngBillingRulec	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description This rule is used to invoice usage summaries related to the product.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngBillingRuler
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngBillingRulec
blngRevenueRecognitionRulec	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description This rule is used to recognize the revenue of usage summaries based on the summary's related revenue recognition rule.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngRevenueRecognitionRuler
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngRevenueRecognitionRulec
blngTaxRulec	Type reference
	Properties

Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description This rule is used to tax usage summary invoice lines based on the summary's related tax rule.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngTaxRuler
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngTaxRulec

Object Reference for the Salesforce Platform: Product2

CHAPTER 2 Salesforce Billing Custom Objects

In this chapter ...

- ldg_AccurBobneSnopshd_c
- blng_AgingBuckets_c
- bhg_BabnæSnapShaRun_c
- lity_BitmeSrpShoShedler_c
- blng BillingBatchJob c
- blng_BillingPrefix_c
- blng__BillingRule__c
- blng_BillingSchedule_c
- blng_BillingTransaction_c
- blng_BillingTreatment_c
- blng__CreditNote__c
- bhg_GrediiNoteAlocotion_c
- blng_CreditNoteLine_c
- blng__DebitNote__c
- blng_DebitNoteLine_c
- blng__FinanceBook__c
- blng_FinancePeriod_c
- blng_GLAccount_c
- blng__GLRule__c
- blng__GLTreatment__c
- blng__Invoice__c
- blng_InvoiceLine_c
- blng__InvoicePlan__c
- blng_InvoicePlanLine_c
- blng__InvoiceRun__c
- blng_InvoiceScheduler_c
- blng_LegalEntity_c
- blng__Payment__c
- ldg_Romer/AbctrDebNottline_c
- bhg_PaymentAbcotorhyaize_c
- ldg_Paymer#badorhaidine_c
- bhg_PaymentAutharization_c
- blng_PaymentGateway_c
- bhg_PaymentCatevrayCanfg_c
- blng_Payment/Vapping_c
- blng_Payment/Vethod_c

The Salesforce Billing data model provides custom objects to manage invoices, payments, and revenue.



Note: The documentation in this developer guide is for the Salesforce Billing managed package. If you're looking for developer documentation for Revenue Cloud, see Get Started with Revenue Cloud Developer Resources.

Salesforce Billing Custom Objects

- blng_PaymentRun_c
- bhg_PaymentScheduler_c
- blng_PaymentTerms_c
- bhg_PaymentTiransadian_c
- blng__Refund__c
- bhg_RefundineCredNoteline_c
- bhg_RefundinePayment_c
- bhg_RevenueAdjustment_c
- bhg_Revenue4dustmentine_c
- bhg_RevenueAgreement_c
- bhg_RevenueDatbutonWethod_c
- bhg_RevenueRecognitorRule_c
- blog_ReverueRecogitonTechnert_c
- blng_RevenueSchedule_c
- bhg_RevenueTiransadian_c
- blng_SubInvoiceLine_c
- blng_TaxConfig_c
- blng_TaxIntegration_c
- blng__TaxRate__c
- blng__TaxRule__c
- blng_TaxTreatment_c
- blng__Usage__c
- blng_UsageSummary_c

__AccountBalanceSnapshot__c

Represents a list of outstanding invoice debt within an account, grouped by the number of days past the due date. The account balance snapshot also includes the amounts of unapplied credit notes and payments within the same account.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(), retrieve(), search(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Fields

Field	Details
CurrencyIsoCode	Туре
	picklist
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description
	The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the legacy entity when multiple currencies are enabled.
LastActivityDate	Туре
	date
	Properties
	Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The timestamp of when a user had last associated a task or event action with the account.
LastReferencedDate	Туре
	dateTime
	Properties
	Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The timestamp when the current user last accessed an accounting balance snapshot indirectly,
	for example, through a list view or related record.
LastViewedDate	Туре
	dateTime
	Properties
	Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The timestamp when the current user last viewed an accounting balance snapshot record. If this value is null, it's possible that the user only accessed the accounting period record or

Field	Details
	a related list view (LastReferencedDate), but not viewed the accounting balance snapshot record itself.
Name	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The name of the account balance snapshot.
OwnerId	Type reference
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Required. The ID of the record owner.
	This field is a polymorphic relationship field.
	Relationship Name Owner
	Refers To
	Group, User
blngAccountBalancec	Туре
	currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The number of unpaid balances across all the account's invoices.
	This field is a calculated field.
blngAccountc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The account for which the invoices are calculated.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngAccountr
	Refers To
	Account

Field Details

blng BalanceSnapshotRunCreatedBy c Type

reference

Properties

Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Description

The balance snapshot run that created the account balance snapshot record.

This field is a relationship field.

Relationship Name

blng__BalanceSnapshotRunCreatedBy__r

blng__BalanceSnapShotRun__c

blng InvoiceAgingBucket10 c

Type

currency

Properties

Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update

Description

An aging bucket represents a range of dates beyond an invoice's due date. For instance, one bucket might cover invoices that are 1–30 days overdue, while another could cover those that are 31–60 days overdue. Users can set up to 10 aging buckets for each org. When a balance snapshot is generated, the overdue amounts are categorized into these aging buckets based on how long they've been past due. For example, if your account had three invoices that were 45 days overdue, their total debt would be grouped and displayed in the 31 to 60-day aging bucket.

blng InvoiceAgingBucket1 c

currency

Properties

Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update

Description

An aging bucket represents a range of dates beyond an invoice's due date.

blng InvoiceAgingBucket2 c

Type

currency

Properties

Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update

Description

An aging bucket represents a range of dates beyond an invoice's due date.

blng InvoiceAgingBucket3 c

currency

Field	Details
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description An aging bucket represents a range of dates beyond an invoice's due date.
blng_InvoiceAgingBucket4_c	Type currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description An aging bucket represents a range of dates beyond an invoice's due date.
blng_InvoiceAgingBucket5_c	Type currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description An aging bucket represents a range of dates beyond an invoice's due date.
blng_InvoiceAgingBucket6_c	Type currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description An aging bucket represents a range of dates beyond an invoice's due date.
blngInvoiceAgingBucket7c	Type currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description An aging bucket represents a range of dates beyond an invoice's due date.
blng_InvoiceAgingBucket8c	Type currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description An aging bucket represents a range of dates beyond an invoice's due date.
blng_InvoiceAgingBucket9_c	Type currency

Field	Details
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description An aging bucket represents a range of dates beyond an invoice's due date.
blngInvoicesc	Type textarea
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description A list of invoices assessed by the balance snapshot run to generate the account balance snapshot, displayed by the record name.
blngNotesc	Type textarea
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description Additional information or comments related to the account balance snapshot record.
blngSnapshotDatec	Type date
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The day that the balance snapshot run created the account balance snapshot record.
blngTotalInvoiceAmountc	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The sum of all invoice balances on the account, including debit notes. This field is different from the total invoice amount that's described in your contractual terms for Salesforce Billing.
	This field is a calculated field.
blng_UnappliedCreditNoteAmount_c	Туре
	currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description The sum of all unapplied credit note amounts on the account.
blng_UnappliedCreditNotesc	Type textarea
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description A list of the unapplied credit notes that the balance snapshot run evaluated, shown by the record name.
blng_UnappliedDebitNoteAmount_c	Type currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The sum of all unapplied debit note amounts on this account.
blng_UnappliedDebitNotesc	Type textarea
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description A list of unapplied debit notes evaluated by the balance snapshot, shown by the record name.
blng_UnappliedPaymentAmount_c	Type currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The sum of all unapplied payments in this account.
blng_UnappliedPayments_c	Type textarea
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description A list of the unapplied payments that the balance snapshot run evaluated, shown by the record name.

Field	Details
blngUniqueIdc	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The unique identification number associated with the account balance snapshot record. This field is unique within your organization.

Associated Objects

This object has the following associated objects. If the API version isn't specified, they're available in the same API versions as this object. Otherwise, they're available in the specified API version and later.

$blng_AccountBalanceSnapshot_ChangeEvent$

Change events are available for the object.

blng__AgingBuckets__c

Represents the outstanding invoices sorted into various aging periods.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(),
retrieve(), search(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Field	Details
CurrencyIsoCode	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the aging buckets when multiple currencies are enabled.
LastActivityDate	Type date
	Properties Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort

Field	Details
	Description The timestamp of when a user had last associated a task or event action with the aging buckets.
LastReferencedDate	Type dateTime
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The timestamp when the current user last accessed an aging bucket record indirectly, for example, through a list view or related record.
LastViewedDate	Type dateTime
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The timestamp when the current user last viewed an aging bucket record. If this value is null, it's possible that the user only accessed the aging bucket record or a related list view (LastReferencedDate), but not viewed the aging bucket record itself.
Name	Type string
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The name of the aging bucket.
OwnerId	Type reference
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Required. The ID of the record owner.
	This field is a polymorphic relationship field.
	Relationship Name Owner
	Refers To Group, User
blngActivec	Type boolean

Field	Details
	Properties 5th Control of the Contro
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Required. Indicates whether the aging bucket is active (true) or not (false). To deactivate the GL treatment, clear the Active checkbox. This setting won't affect past or existing transactions or assignments.
	The default value is false.
blngBucketNumberc	Туре
	double
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Sort, Update
	Description
	Required. Classifies the records based on their age.
blng_EndingDaysfromPastDue_c	Type double
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The number of days from the past due date to the end of an aging bucket.
blngNotesc	Туре
	string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description Additional details or comments related to the aging buckets.
blng_StartingDaysfromPastDue_c	Туре
	double
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The starting point for calculating the number of days an invoice is past due.

blng__BalanceSnapShotRun__c

Represents the analysis of an account's invoices on a scheduled basis for past-due balances.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(),
retrieve(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Field	Details
CurrencyIsoCode	Туре
	picklist
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description
	The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the balance snapshot run when multiple currencies are enabled.
LastActivityDate	Туре
	date
	Properties
	Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort
	Description The timestamp of when a user had last associated a task or event action with the halance.
	The timestamp of when a user had last associated a task or event action with the balance snapshot run.
Name	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The name of the balance snapshot run.
OwnerId	Туре
	reference
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Required. The ID of the record owner.
	This field is a polymorphic relationship field.
	Relationship Name
	Owner
	Refers To
	Group, User

Field	Details
blngApexJobIdc	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description A unique identifier of an Apex job associated with the balance snapshot run.
	A unique identifier of all Apex Job associated with the balance shapshot full.
blng_BalanceSnapshotScheduler_c	Туре
	reference
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description Considers the way to schedule and manage balance spanshets
	Specifies the way to schedule and manage balance snapshots.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngBalanceSnapshotSchedulerr
	Refers To
	blngBalanceSnapShotSchedulerc
blngNotesc	Туре
	textarea
	Properties
	Create, Nillable, Update
	Description
	Additional details or comments related to the balance snapshot run.
blngStatusc	Туре
	picklist
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The status of the balance snapshot run.
	Valid values are:
	• Completed
	Credit Note Completed
	Credit Note Processing
	Debit Note Completed
	Debit Note Processing
	• Error
	• Invoice Completed

Field	Details
	• Invoice Processing
	• Payment Completed
	 Payment Processing
	• Started

blng__BalanceSnapShotScheduler__c

Represents the Balance Snapshot Scheduler, which creates a Balance Snapshot Run to regularly analyze your account's invoices for past-due balances.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(),
retrieve(), search(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Field	Details
CurrencyIsoCode	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the balance snapshot scheduler record when multiple currencies are enabled.
LastActivityDate	Type date
	Properties Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort
	Description The timestamp of when a user had last associated a task or event action with the balance snapshot scheduler.
LastReferencedDate	Туре
	dateTime
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort

Field	Details
	Description The timestamp when the current user last accessed a balance snapshot scheduler record indirectly, for example, through a list view or related record.
LastViewedDate	Type dateTime
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The timestamp when the current user last viewed a balance snapshot scheduler record. If this value is null, it's possible that the user only accessed the balance snapshot scheduler record or a related list view (LastReferencedDate), but not viewed the balance snapshot scheduler record itself.
Name	Type string
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The name of the balance snapshot scheduler.
OwnerId	Type reference
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Required. The ID of the record owner.
	This field is a polymorphic relationship field.
	Relationship Name Owner
	Refers To Group, User
blngApexJobIdc	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description A unique identifier of an Apex job associated with the balance snapshot scheduler.
blngNotesc	Type textarea

Field	Details
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description Additional details or comments related to the balance snapshot scheduler.
blngStartDateTimec	Type dateTime
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The date and time when the scheduler starts the run.
blngTypec	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description Required. The frequency of the balance snapshot schedule.
	Valid values are:
	• Daily
	Monthly
	• Once
	• Weekly

blng__BillingBatchJob__c

Represents a scheduled processing job that triggers recurring invoice batch runs and payment batch runs.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(),
retrieve(), search(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Field	Details
CurrencyIsoCode	Type picklist

Field	Details
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the billing batch job when multiple currencies are enabled.
LastActivityDate	Type date
	Properties Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort
	Description The timestamp of when a user had last associated a task or event action with the billing batch job.
Name	Type string
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The name of the billing batch job.
OwnerId	Type reference
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Required. The ID of the record owner.
	This field is a polymorphic relationship field.
	Relationship Name Owner
	Refers To Group, User
blngApexJobIdc	Type
	string Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description A unique identifier of an Apex job associated with the billing batch job.

Field	Details
blngCompleteTimec	Type dateTime
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The timestamp when the batch job was completed.
blngStartTimec	Type dateTime
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The time when the scheduler triggers the batch processing job.
blngStatusc	Type
	picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description
	The status of the scheduler. Only active schedulers are capable of triggering batch processing jobs.
	Valid values are:
	• Completed
	Completed with errors
	• Processing
	• Started
	• Step 1/2 Completed
	• Step 1/2 Processing
	• Step 2/2 Completed
	• Step 2/2 Processing
blngTypec	Туре
	picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The type of billing batch job.
	Valid values are:
	• Auto Renewals
	MRR Calculation

Field	Details
	• Usage

blng__BillingPrefix__c

Represents a prefix that can be appended to billing-related records for storage purposes.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(),
retrieve(), search(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Field	Details
CurrencyIsoCode	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the billing prefix record when multiple currencies are enabled.
Name	Type string
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The name of the billing prefix.
SetupOwnerId	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The ID of the record owner.
	This field is a polymorphic relationship field.
	Relationship Name SetupOwner

Field	Details
	Refers To Organization, Profile, User
blngBarPrefixc	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description A prefix value of barcodes.
blngDotPrefixc	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description A prefix value of dots.
blngRawPrefixc	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description A raw prefix value.

blng__BillingRule__c

Represents how and when billing must occur for products and services.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(),
retrieve(), search(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Field	Details
CurrencyIsoCode	Type how and when billing should occur for products and services. picklist

Field	Details
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the billing rule record when multiple currencies are enabled.
LastActivityDate	Type date
	Properties Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort
	Description The timestamp of when a user had last associated a task or event action with the billing rule.
LastReferencedDate	Type dateTime
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The timestamp when the current user last accessed a billing rule record indirectly, for example, through a list view or related record.
LastViewedDate	Type dateTime
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The timestamp when the current user last viewed a billing rule record. If this value is null, it's possible that the user only accessed the billing rule record or a related list view (LastReferencedDate), but not viewed the billing rule record itself.
Name	Type string
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update Description
	The name of the billing rule.
OwnerId	Type reference
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update

	Description
	Required. The ID of the record owner.
	This field is a polymorphic relationship field.
	Relationship Name Owner
	Refers To Group, User
blngActivec	Type boolean
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Required. Indicates whether the billing rule is active (true) or not (false). To deactivate the billing rule, clear the Active checkbox. This setting won't affect past or existing transactions or assignments. The default value is true.
blng_AmendmentBillCycleDateAlignment_	1366
	picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description Specifies how the bill cycle date must be aligned when an amendment is made.
	Valid values are:
	Align to original Order Product
	Do not align amended Order Product
	The default value is Do not align amended Order Product.
blngGenerateInvoicesc	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description Required. Specifies if the billing rule creates invoices.
	Valid values are:
	• No
	• Yes

Field Details

Properties

Create, Filter, Group, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update

Description

Required. Specifies the occurrence whose date is used to calculate the initial billing trigger date.

Valid value is:

• Order Product Activation Date

blng__Notes__c

Type

textarea

Properties

Create, Nillable, Update

Description

Additional details or comments related to the billing rule.

blng_PartialPericdTreatment_c

Type

picklist

Properties

Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update

Description

Required. The process for generating bills for recurring order products that begin billing on a different day than their start date.

Valid values are:

- Combine
- Separate

The default value is Separate.

blng PeriodTreatmentForBTDO c

Type

picklist

Properties

Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update

Description

This field is relevant only if an order product has a Bill Through Date Override (BTDO) value within a billing cycle. This field specifies the option to merge a partial billing period with the previous full period when generating an invoice line, or to keep the partial period as a separate invoice line.

Valid values are:

- Combine
- · Exclude Billing Day of Month
- Separate

Field	Details
	The default value is Exclude Billing Day of Month.

blng__BillingSchedule__c

Represents information about the order product that's invoiced based on the invoice plan billing frequency.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(),
retrieve(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Field	Details
CurrencyIsoCode	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the billing schedule's order product when multiple currencies are enabled.
	The default value is USD.
Name	Type string
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The name of the billing schedule.
OwnerId	Type reference
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description The ID of the user who created the billing schedule.
	This field is a polymorphic relationship field.
	Relationship Name Owner

Field	Details
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To Group, User
blng_Amount_c	Type currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The total amount that has been invoiced for the order product, excluding tax.
blngBilledAmountc	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The total amount that has been billed for the order product related to the billing schedule, based on the order product's invoice plan lines.
	This field is a calculated field.
blngInvoicePlanc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The invoice plan associated with the billing schedule.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blnglnvoicePlanr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngInvoicePlanc
blng_NuberOfBillerBillingTransactions_c	туре
	double Properties
	Filter, Nillable, Sort

Field	Details
	Description The number of billing transactions that are associated with the billing schedule with the status as Billed.
	This field is a calculated field.
blng_NurberOfBillingTransactions_c	Type double
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The number of billing transactions that are associated with the billing schedule. This field is a calculated field.
blng_NinterOfCarceletBillingNarsections_c	Type double
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The number of billing transactions associated with the billing schedule with the status as Canceled.
	This field is a calculated field.
blngOrderProductc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The order product associated with the billing schedule.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngOrderProductr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To OrderItem
blngSourcec	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description
	The source of the billing schedule.
	Valid values are:
	• External
	• Standard
blngStatusc	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The status of the billing schedule. The formula for calculating the status is
	<pre>IF(blng_BilledAmount_c == blng_Amount_c, "Billed", IF((blng_NumberOfBillingTransactions_c != 0 && blng_NumberOfBillingTransactions_c = blng_NumberOfCanceledBillingTransactions_c), "Cancelled", "Pending"))</pre>
	. This field is a calculated field.
blng TaxCity c	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The city of the address that Salesforce Billing uses to calculate tax for the billing schedule's order product.
blngTaxCountryc	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The country of the address that Salesforce Billing uses to calculate tax for the billing schedule's order product.
blngTaxStatec	Type string
	Properties

Field	Details
	Description The state of the address that Salesforce Billing uses to calculate tax for the billing schedule's order product.
blngTaxStreetc	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The street of the address that Salesforce Billing uses to calculate tax for the billing schedule's order product.
blngTaxZipCodec	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The postal code of the address that Salesforce Billing uses to calculate tax for the billing schedule's order product.

blng__BillingTransaction__c

Represents information about each invoice plan line of a billing schedule. A billing transaction stores the billed amount based on the relationship between the invoice plan line's commencement date and the order product's service start and end dates. When a billing transaction is invoiced, Salesforce Billing copies data from the billing transaction to the invoice line.



Important: Where possible, we changed noninclusive terms to align with our company value of Equality. We maintained certain terms to avoid any effect on customer implementations.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(),
retrieve(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Field	Details
CurrencyIsoCode	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the billing transaction's schedule when multiple currencies are enabled.
	The default value is USD.
Name	Type string
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The name of the billing transaction.
blng_AmountToBeBilled_c	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The amount to be billed for the order product related to the billing transaction's billing schedule. The formula for calculating this amount when its blank is
	<pre>IF(ISBLANK(blngOverrideAmountc) , blngAmountc , blngOverrideAmountc)</pre>
	. This field is a calculated field.
blngAmountc	Туре
	Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The amount that has been invoiced for the order product by the billing transaction.
blngBillingSchedulec	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Sort
	Description The billing schedule related to the billing transaction.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngBillingScheduler

Field	Details
	Relationship Type Master-detail
	Refers To blngBillingSchedulec
blng_BillingTargetDate_c	Type date
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The date when the invoice line is created for the order product.
blngCalculatedStatusc	Type string
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The status of the billing transaction by using the formula
	<pre>IF(ISPICKVAL(blngOverrideStatusc, "None"), TEXT(blngStatusc), TEXT(blngOverrideStatusc))</pre>
	This field is a calculated field.
blngInvoicePlanLinec	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The invoice plan associated with the billing transaction.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngInvoicePlanLiner
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngInvoicePlanLinec
blngOverrideAmountc	Type currency

Field	Details
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
blng_OvernideBillingTargetDate_c	Туре
	date
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The date that overrides the billing target date of the billing transaction.
blngOverrideStatusc	
	picklist
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The value that overrides the Status value of the billing transaction.
	Valid value is Cancelled.
blngQuantityc	Type double
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The quantity of the order product that the billing transaction invoices.
blngServicePeriodEndc	Туре
	date
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The start date of the service period of the order product associated with the billing schedule.
blng_ServicePeriodStart_c	Type date
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The end date of the service period of the order product associated with the billing schedule.

Field	Details
blngSourcec	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The source of the billing transaction.
	Valid values are:
	• External
	• Standard
blngStatusc	Туре
	picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The status of the billing transaction.
	Valid values are:
	• Billed
	• Cancelled
	• Pending

blng__BillingTreatment__c

Represents information about how Salesforce Billing records billing rule actions in your finance books and general ledgers. Use billing treatments to specify an invoice plan and cancellation invoice plan for dynamic invoice plans. You can also set up the cancellation rule for amendment orders to override the package setting for the default cancel order rule.

(1) Important: Where possible, we changed noninclusive terms to align with our company value of Equality. We maintained certain terms to avoid any effect on customer implementations.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(),
retrieve(), search(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Field	Details
CurrencyIsoCode	Туре
	picklist
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the billing treatment when multiple currencies are enabled.
	The default value is USD.
LastReferencedDate	Type dateTime
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The timestamp of when the current user had last accessed the billing treatment, or a record or list view related to the billing treatment.
LastViewedDate	Type dateTime
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The timestamp when the current user last viewed the billing treatment, a record related to this record, or a record or list view related to the billing treatment. If this value is null, it's possible the user accessed this record or list view (LastReferencedDate) but didn't view it.
Name	Туре
	string
	Properties Create Defaulted on greate Filter Croup idleadays Nillable Sort Hadate
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The name of the billing treatment.
blngActivec	Туре
	boolean
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Indicates whether the billing treatment is active (true) or not (false).

The default value is true. bling_BillingFinanceBook_c reference Properties Create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update Description The finance book that has finance periods to all the invoice lines that the billing rule creates from the order product. This field is a relationship field. Relationship Name bling_BillingFinanceBook_r Relationship Type

 ${\tt blng_BillingGLRule_c}$

Type

reference

Lookup

Refers To

Properties

Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Description

 $\label{thm:continuous} The \ General \ Ledger \ (GL) \ rule \ used \ to \ determine \ the \ GL \ accounts \ for \ the \ finance \ transaction.$

This field is a relationship field.

Relationship Name

blng__BillingGLRule__r

blng__FinanceBook__c

Relationship Type

Lookup

Refers To

blng__GLRule__c

blng_BillingLegalEntity_c

Type

reference

Properties

Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Description

The legal entity related to the billing treatment. When your billing rule evaluates an order product, Salesforce Billing applies one of the rule's treatments if the order product and treatment have matching legal entities.

This field is a relationship field.

Field	Details
	Relationship Name blngBillingLegalEntityr Relationship Type
	Lookup
	Refers To blngLegalEntityc
blngBillingRulec	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Sort
	Description The billing rule related to the billing treatment.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngBillingRuler
	Relationship Type Master-detail
	Refers To blngBillingRulec (the master object)
blng_CancellationInvoicePlan_c	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The cancellation invoice plan related to the billing treatment.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngCancellationInvoicePlanr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngInvoicePlanc
blng_CancellationRule_c	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description The cancellation rule for amendment orders. This rule overrides the package setting for the default cancel order rule.
	Valid values are:
	 LIFO by Order Product Creation Date
	• Legacy
	The default value is Legacy.
blng_InvoicePlan_c	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The invoice plan associated with the billing treatment.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngInvoicePlanr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngInvoicePlanc
blng_Notesc	Type textarea
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description Additional details about the billing transaction.

blng__CreditNote__c

Represents information about the amount that's used to reduce the amount that a buyer owes a seller under the terms of an earlier invoice. A credit note always decreases the balance of an invoice. Users can apply positive credit notes to positive invoices, for example, a \$10 credit note reduces the balance of a \$100 invoice line to \$90.

Important: Where possible, we changed noninclusive terms to align with our company value of Equality. We maintained certain terms to avoid any effect on customer implementations.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(),
retrieve(), search(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Field	Details
CurrencyIsoCode	Туре
	picklist
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description
	The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the credit note.
	The default value is USD.
LastReferencedDate	Туре
	dateTime
	Properties
	Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The timestamp of when the current user had last accessed the credit note, or a record or list view related to the credit note.
LastViewedDate	Туре
	dateTime
	Properties Filter Millable Cort
	Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The timestamp when the current user last viewed the credit note, or a record or list view
	related to the credit note. If this value is null, it's possible the user accessed this record or list view (LastReferencedDate) but didn't view it.
Name	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Autonumber, Defaulted on create, Filter, idLookup, Sort
	Description
	The name of the credit note.
blngAccountc	Туре
	reference

Field	Details
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Sort
	Description
	The customer account associated with the credit note.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngAccountr
	Relationship Type Master-detail
	Refers To Account
blng_Allocations_c	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The credit note's balance that's allocated to invoice lines.
	This field is a calculated field.
blng_Balance_c	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description Amount of the credit note that's available for allocation or refund. The balance amount is calculated using the formula
	<pre>blngTotalAmountc - blngAllocationsc + blngUnallocationsc - blngDebitsc - blngRefundsc</pre>
	. This field is a calculated field.
blng_BaseCurrencyAmount_	- ^C Type
	currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The credit note's total amount in the base currency.

Field Details blng BaseCurrencyFXDate c Type date **Properties** Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update Description The date used to determine the foreign exchange rate when calculating the base currency amount. blng BaseCurrencyFXRate_c Type double **Properties** Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update Description The foreign exchange rate that's used to convert the credit note's total amount to the base currency amount. blng__BaseCurrency__c Type string **Properties** Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update Description The base currency that's used for converting currency during data export. blng__BillToAccount__c Type reference **Properties** Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update Description The account that receives information about the credit note. This field is a relationship field. **Relationship Name** blng__BillToAccount__r **Relationship Type** Lookup **Refers To** Account blng BillToContact c Type reference **Properties** Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description The user who receives information about the credit note. This value is inherited from the account's PersonContactId field.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngBillToContactr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To Contact
blng_BillingFinanceBookc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The finance book associated with the credit note.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngBillingFinanceBookr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngFinanceBookc
blng_BillingFinancePeriod_c	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The finance period associated with the credit note.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngBillingFinancePeriodr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngFinancePeriodc
blngCreditNoteDatec	Type date

Field	Details
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description The date when the credit note was posted.
blng_CreditNoteSourceAction_c	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The action that created the credit note.
	Valid values are:
	• Cancel & Rebill
	• Credit
	Invoice Line Credit
	• Manual
	Negative Lines Conversion
	The default value is Manual.
blngDebitsc	Type currency
	Properties
	Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The sum of allocations of the debit notes associated with the credit note.
	This field is a calculated field.
blng_EffectiveTaxDate_c	Type date
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The date when the tax is applied to the credit note.
blng_EstimateTaxProcessTime_c	Type double
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The estimated time for processing tax for the credit note.

Field	Details
blngImpactAmountc	Туре
	currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The credit note's financial impact against the customer's accounts receivable. When the credit note is applied, the impact amount is the negative equivalent of the credit note's total amount.
	This field is a calculated field.
blngNetAllocationsc	Турс
	double
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The difference between the allocated and unallocated amounts of the credit note.
	This field is a calculated field.
blngNotesc	Туре
	textarea
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description Additional details about the credit note.
blngRefundsc	Туре
	currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The sum of refund amount of all the related credit note lines.
	This field is a calculated field.
blngRelatedInvoicec	Туре
	reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The invoice that this credit note was applied to.
	This field is a relationship field.
	וווא וופוע וא מ דפומנוטרואוווף וופוע.

Field	Details
	Relationship Name blngRelatedInvoicer
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngInvoicec
blngStatusc	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The status of the credit note.
	Valid values are:
	• Cancelled
	• Draft
	• Posted
	The default value is Draft.
blngSubtotalc	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The sum of subtotals of all the related credit note lines.
	This field is a calculated field.
blngTaxAmountc	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The amount of tax for the credit note.
	This field is a calculated field.
blngTaxCityc	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description The city of the address that Salesforce Billing uses to calculate tax for the credit note.
blngTaxCountryc	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The country of the address that Salesforce Billing uses to calculate tax for the credit note.
blngTaxErrorMessagec	Type string
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update Description
	The error message when the external tax engine fails to calculate tax for the credit note.
blngTaxStatec	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The state of the address that Salesforce Billing uses to calculate tax for the credit note.
blngTaxStreet2c	Туре
	String Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The street of the address that Salesforce Billing uses to calculate tax for the credit note.
blngTaxStreetc	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The street of the address that Salesforce Billing uses to calculate tax for the credit note.
blngTaxZipCodec	Type
	string Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description The postal code of the address that Salesforce Billing uses to calculate tax for the credit note.
blngTotalAmountc	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The sum of amounts of the credit note's lines and adjustment lines.
	This field is a calculated field.
blngUnallocationsc	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The amount that's been unallocated from the credit note.
	This field is a calculated field.

blng__CreditNoteAllocation__c

Represents allocation information about a credit note line that's been allocated to an invoice line.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(),
retrieve(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Fields

Field	Details
CurrencyIsoCode	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the allocated credit note. The default value is USD.

Field	Details
Name	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Autonumber, Defaulted on create, Filter, idLookup, Sort
	Description The name of the credit note allocation.
1.1	
blngAmountc	Туре
	currency
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Sort, Update
	Description
	The amount that's allocated from the credit note line.
blng_BillingFinanceBook_c	Туре
	reference
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The finance book associated with the allocated credit note line.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name
	blngBillingFinanceBookr
	Relationship Type
	Lookup
	Refers To
	blngFinanceBookc
blng_BillingFinancePeriod_c	Туре
	reference
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The finance period associated with the allocated credit note line.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name
	blngBillingFinancePeriodr
	Relationship Type
	Lookup
	Refers To
	blngFinancePeriodc

Field	Details
blngBillingGLRulec	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The General Ledger (GL) rule that's used to determine the GL accounts for the invoice line to which the credit note line is allocated.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngBillingGLRuler
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngGLRulec
blng_BillingGLTreatment_c	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The billing treatment associated with the billing General Ledger (GL) rule of the allocated credit note line.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngBillingGLTreatmentr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngGLTreatmentc
blngBillingRulec	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The billing rule associated with the allocated credit note line.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngBillingRuler
	Relationship Type Lookup

Field	Details
	Refers To blngBillingRulec
blngBillingTreatmentc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The billing treatment associated with the allocated credit note line.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngBillingTreatmentr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngBillingTreatmentc
blngCreditNoteLinec	Type
	reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Sort
	Description The credit note line that's allocated.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngCreditNoteLiner
	Relationship Type Master-detail
	Refers To blngCreditNoteLinec (the detail object)
blngImpactAmountc	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The allocated credit note line's financial impact against the customer's accounts receivable. When the credit note line is applied, the impact amount is the negative equivalent of the credit note line's amount.
	This field is a calculated field.

Field	Details
blngInvoiceLinec	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Sort
	Description The invoice line to which the credit note line is allocated.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngInvoiceLiner
	Relationship Type Master-detail
	Refers To blngInvoiceLinec
blngLegalEntityc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The legal entity associated with the allocated credit note line.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngLegalEntityr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngLegalEntityc
blngNotesc	Type textarea
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description Additional details about the credit note line's allocation.
blngTaxGLRulec	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description The tax rule for recording tax transactions of the allocated credit note line in an external general ledger.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngTaxGLRuler
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngGLRulec
blngTaxGLTreatmentc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The tax treatment for recording tax transactions of the allocated credit note line in an external general ledger.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngTaxGLTreatmentr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngGLTreatmentc
blngTaxRulec	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The rule used to tax the allocated credit note line.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngTaxRuler
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngTaxRulec

Field	Details
blngTaxTreatmentc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The tax treatment assigned to the allocated credit note line. Tax rules and their treatments define how Salesforce Billing processes tax for your transactions.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngTaxTreatmentr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngTaxTreatmentc
blngTypec	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description Specifies the type of the credit note allocation.
	Possible values are:
	• Allocation
	• Unallocation
blngUnallocatedc	Type boolean
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description This field indicates whether the credit note allocation of type Allocation has a corresponding credit note allocation of type Unallocation.
	The default value is false.

blng__CreditNoteLine__c

Represents product, service, adjustment, or tax line items that were included in a credit note.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(),
retrieve(), search(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Fields

Field	Details
CurrencyIsoCode	Туре
	picklist
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description
	The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the credit note line.
	The default value is USD.
Name	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Autonumber, Defaulted on create, Filter, idLookup, Sort
	Description
	The name of the credit note line.
blng_AllocatedRevenueAmour	ttC Type
	currency
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The credit note's revenue amount that's allocated to invoice lines.
blngAllocationsc	Туре
	currency
	Properties
	Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The credit note line's amount that's allocated to invoice lines, excluding tax.
	This field is a calculated field.
blngBalancec	Туре
	currency
	Properties
	Filter, Nillable, Sort

Field Details Description Amount of the credit note line that's available for allocation or refund. The balance is calculated using the formula blng TotalAmount c - blng Allocations c + blng_Unallocations_c - blng_Refunds_c - blng_Debits_c This field is a calculated field. blng_BaseCurrencyAmount_c Type currency **Properties** Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update Description The credit note line's total amount in the base currency. blng_BaseCurrencyFXDate_c Type date **Properties** Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update The date used to determine the foreign exchange rate when calculating the base currency amount. blng_BaseCurrencyFXRate__c Type double **Properties** Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update Description The foreign exchange rate that's used to convert the credit note line's total amount to the base currency amount. blng__BaseCurrency__c Type string **Properties** Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update Description The base currency that's used for converting currency during data export. blng BillToAccount c reference

Field Details Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update Description The account that receives information about the credit note line. This field is a relationship field. **Relationship Name** blng__BillToAccount__r **Relationship Type** Lookup **Refers To** Account blng BillToContact c Type reference **Properties** Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update Description The user who receives information about the credit note line. This value is inherited from the account's Bill to Contact field. This field is a relationship field. **Relationship Name** blng__BillToContact__r **Relationship Type** Lookup **Refers To** Contact blng BillingFinanceBook c reference **Properties** Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update Description The finance book associated with the related credit note. This field is a relationship field. **Relationship Name** blng__BillingFinanceBook___r **Relationship Type** Lookup **Refers To** blng__FinanceBook__c

Field Details blng BillingGLRule c Type reference **Properties** Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update Description The General Ledger (GL) rule that's used to determine the GL accounts for the invoice line associated with the credit note line. This field is a relationship field. **Relationship Name** blng__BillingGLRule__r **Relationship Type** Lookup **Refers To** blng__GLRule__c blng BillingGLTreatment c Type reference **Properties** Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update Description The billing treatment associated with the billing General Ledger (GL) rule of the credit note This field is a relationship field. **Relationship Name** blng__BillingGLTreatment__r **Relationship Type** Lookup **Refers To** blng__GLTreatment__c blng BillingRule c Type reference **Properties** Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update Description The billing rule associated with the credit note line. This field is a relationship field. **Relationship Name** blng__BillingRule__r **Relationship Type** Lookup

Field	Details
	Refers To blngBillingRulec
blng_BillingTreatment_c	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The billing treatment associated with the credit note line.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngBillingTreatmentr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngBillingTreatmentc
blngCalculateTaxc	Type boolean
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description This field indicates whether tax must be calculated for the credit note line.
	The default value is false.
blng_CreditNoteLineDate_c	Type date
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The date when the credit note line was posted.
blngCreditNotec	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Sort
	Description The credit note associated with the credit note line.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngCreditNoter

Field	Details
	Relationship Type Master-detail
	Refers To blngCreditNotec
blngDebitsc	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The allocated amount of the debit note that's associated with the credit note line.
	This field is a calculated field.
blngEffectiveTaxDatec	Type date
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The date when the tax is applied to the credit note line.
blng_EndDate_c	Type date
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The end date of the credit note line.
blngFinancePeriodc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The finance period associated with the credit note line.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngFinancePeriodr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngFinancePeriodc

Field	Details
blngImpactAmountc	Туре
	currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The credit note line's financial impact against the customer's accounts receivable. When the credit note line is applied, the impact amount is the negative equivalent of the credit note line's amount.
	This field is a calculated field.
blngInvoiceLinec	Туре
	reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The invoice that the credit note line was applied to.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blnglnvoiceLiner
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngInvoiceLinec
blng_legalEntityReference_c	Type
	string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The legal entity associated with the credit note line.
blngLegalEntityc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The legal entity associated with the credit note line.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngLegalEntityr

Field	Details
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngLegalEntityc
blngNetAllocationsc	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The difference between the allocated and unallocated amounts of the credit note line. This field is a calculated field.
blngNotesc	Type textarea
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description Additional details about the credit note line.
blng_OvernideInitialReverueFndDate_c	Type date
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The date that overrides the revenue end date of the revenue schedule associated with the credit note line.
blng_OverniceInitialReveneStartDate_c	Type date
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The date that overrides the revenue start date of the revenue schedule associated with the credit note line.
blngProductNamec	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description The name of the product associated with the credit note line.
blngProductc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The product associated with the credit note line.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngProductr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To Product2
blng_RefundsAllocations_c	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The amount of the credit note line that's allocated to refunds.
	This field is a calculated field.
blng_RefundsUnallocations_c	Турс
	Currency Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The amount of the credit note line that's unallocated from refunds.
	This field is a calculated field.
blngRefundsc	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort

Field

Description

Details

The amount of the credit note line that's been refunded. This amount is calculated by using the formula

blng RefundsAllocations c - blng RefundsUnallocations c

This field is a calculated field.

blng RevenueExpectedAmount c

currency

Properties

Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update

Description

The expected revenue impact of the credit note line, if its different from the credit note line amount. You can configure creating revenue schedules for the credit note line with revenue expected amount field as the amount of the revenue schedule.

blng_RevenueLiabilityAmount_c Type

currency

Properties

Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update

Description

The revenue liability associated with the credit note line. You can configure creating revenue schedules for the credit note line with revenue liability amount field as the amount of the revenue schedule.

blng RevenueMostLikelyAmount c

Type

currency

Properties

Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update

Description

The most likely revenue impact of the credit note line for revenue calculations when the revenue amount is uncertain.

blng RevenueScheduleStatus c

Type

picklist

Properties

Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update

Description

Specifies the status of the revenue scendule associated with the credit note line.

Possible values are:

• Complete

Field	Details
	• Error
	• Queued
blngStartDatec	Туре
	date
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The start date of the credit note line.
blngStatusc	Type picklist
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description Specifies the status of the credit note line.
	Possible values are:
	• Cancelled
	• Draft
	• Posted
	The default value is Draft.
blngSubtotalc	Туре
	currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The amount of the credit note line, excluding tax, that's not refunded. The subtotal is calculated by deducting the refund amount from the amount.
blngTaxAmountc	Type
	Currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The amount of tax for the credit note line.
blngTaxCityc	Type string
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description The city of the address that Salesforce Billing uses to calculate tax for the credit note line.
blngTaxCodec	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The reference code used when tax for the credit note line is calculated by an external tax engine.
blngTaxCountryc	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The country of the address that Salesforce Billing uses to calculate tax for the credit note line.
blngTaxEnginec	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The tax engine that has calculated tax for the credit note line.
	Possible values are:
	Avalara AvaTax
	• Standard
	The default value is Standard.
blngTaxErrorMessagec	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The error message when the external tax engine fails to calculate tax for the credit note line.
blngTaxGLRulec	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description The tax rule for recording tax transactions of the credit note line in an external general ledger.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngTaxGLRuler
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngGLRulec
blngTaxGLTreatmentc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The tax treatment for recording tax transactions of the credit note line in an external general ledger.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngTaxGLTreatmentr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngGLTreatmentc
blng_TaxPercentageApplied_c	Type percent
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The percentage of tax that was applied to the credit note line.
blngTaxRulec	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The rule used to tax the credit note line.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngTaxRuler

Field	Details
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To
	blngTaxRulec
blngTaxStatec	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The state of the address that Salesforce Billing uses to calculate tax for the credit note line.
blngTaxStatusc	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description Specifies the status of the tax calculation.
	Possible values are:
	• Completed
	• Copied
	• Error
	• Processing
	• Queued
	• Warning
blngTaxStreet2c	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The street of the address that Salesforce Billing uses to calculate tax for the credit note line.
blngTaxStreetc	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The street of the address that Salesforce Billing uses to calculate tax for the credit note line.

Field	Details
blngTaxTreatmentc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The tax treatment assigned to the credit note line. Tax rules and their treatments define how Salesforce Billing processes tax for your transactions.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngTaxTreatmentr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngTaxTreatmentc
blngTaxZipCodec	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The postal code of the address that Salesforce Billing uses to calculate tax for the credit note line.
blngTotalAmountc	Type currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The total amount of the credit note line that's available for allocation.
blngUnallocationsc	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The amount that's been unallocated from the credit note line.
	This field is a calculated field.

blng__DebitNote__c

Represents information about the positive balance change that you can allocate to an invoice line or a positive credit note line.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(),
retrieve(), search(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Fields

Field	Details
CurrencyIsoCode	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the debit note.
	The default value is USD.
LastActivityDate	Type date
	Properties Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort
	Description The timestamp for when a user last associated a task or event action with the debit note.
LastReferencedDate	Type dateTime
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The timestamp of when the current user had last accessed the debit note, or a record or list view related to the debit note.
LastViewedDate	Type dateTime
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort

Field	Details
	Description The timestamp when the current user last viewed the the debit note, or a record or list view related to the debit note. If this value is null, it's possible the user accessed this record or list view (LastReferencedDate) but didn't view it.
Name	Type string
	Properties Autonumber, Defaulted on create, Filter, idLookup, Sort
	Description The name of the debit note.
blngAccountc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Sort
	Description The customer account associated with the debit note.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngAccountr
	Relationship Type Master-detail
	Refers To Account
blng_Allocationsc	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The amount from the debit note line that's allocated.
	This field is a calculated field.
blng_AvailableForPayment_	Туре
	Currency Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The amount from the debit note that's available for payment. This field is a calculated field.

Field	Details
blngBalancec	Туре
	currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description Amount of the debit note that's available for application.
	This field is a calculated field.
blng_BaseCurrencyAmount_c	Туре
	currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The debit note's total amount in the base currency.
blng_BaseCurrencyFXDate_c	Туре
	date
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The date used to determine the foreign exchange rate when calculating the base currency amount.
blng_BaseCurrencyFXRate_c	Type double
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The foreign exchange rate that's used to convert the debit note's total amount to the base currency amount.
blngBaseCurrencyc	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The base currency that's used for converting currency during data export.
blngBillToAccountc	Туре
	reference

Field	Details
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The account that receives information about the debit note.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngBillToAccountr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To Account
blngBillToContactc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The user who receives information about the debit note. This value is inherited from the account's Bill to Contact field.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngBillToContactr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To Contact
blngBillingFinanceBookc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The finance book associated with the debit note.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngBillingFinanceBookr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngFinanceBookc

Field	Details
blng_BillingFinancePeriod_c	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The finance period associated with the debit note.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngBillingFinancePeriodr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngFinancePeriodc
blng_CreditNoteLineAllocations_c	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The amount allocated from all the related credit note lines.
	This field is a calculated field.
blng_CreditNoteLineUnallocations_c	Туре
	currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The amount that's unallocated from all the related credit note lines.
	This field is a calculated field.
blngDebitNoteDatec	Type date
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The date when the debit note was posted.
blng_DebitNoteSourceAction_c	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description
	Specifies the action that created the debit note.
	Possible values are:
	• Manual
	The default value is Manual.
blngEffectiveTaxDatec	Туре
	date
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The date when the tax is applied to the debit note.
blngImpactAmountc	Туре
	currency
	Properties
	Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The debit note's financial impact against the customer's accounts receivable. When the debit
	note is applied, the impact amount is equivalent to its total amount.
	This field is a calculated field.
blng_InvoiceLineAllocations_c	Туре
	currency
	Properties
	Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The amount from the debit note that's allocated to an invoice line.
	This field is a calculated field.
blng_InvoiceLineUnallocations_c	Туре
	currency
	Properties
	Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The amount from the debit note that's unallocated from an invoice line.
	This field is a calculated field.
blng_NetCreditNoteAllocations_c	Type
	currency

Field	Details
	Properties
	Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The total amount of the related credit note that's allocated to an invoice line. The net credit net allocations are calculated by deducting the related credit note line's unallocated amount from its allocated amount.
	This field is a calculated field.
blng_NetInvoiceAllocations_c	Туре
	currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The total amount of the debit note that's allocated to invoices. The net invoice allocations are calculated by deducting the related invoice line's unallocated amount from its allocated amount.
	This field is a calculated field.
blng_NetPaymentAllocations_c	Туре
	currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The total amount of the debit note that's allocated to payments. The net payment allocations are calculated by deducting the debit note's refund amount from its payment amount.
	This field is a calculated field.
blngNotesc	Туре
	textarea
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description Additional details about the debit note.
blngPaymentBalancec	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The amount of the debit note after excluding payments and refunds.
	This field is a calculated field.

Field	Details
blngPayments1c	Туре
	currency
	Properties
	Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The payment made from the debit note's amount after deducting the refund amount.
	This field is a calculated field.
blngPaymentsc	Туре
	currency
	Properties
	Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The payment made from the debit note's amount.
	This field is a calculated field.
blngRefundsc	Туре
	currency
	Properties
	Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The refund that's added to the debit note's amount.
	This field is a calculated field.
blngStatusc	Туре
	picklist
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description Chasifies the status of the debit note
	Specifies the status of the debit note.
	Possible values are:
	• Cancelled
	• Draft
	• Posted
	The default value is Draft.
blngSubtotalc	Туре
	currency
	Properties
	Filter, Nillable, Sort

Field	Details
	Description
	The sum of subtotals of all the related debit note lines.
	This field is a calculated field.
blngTaxAmountc	Туре
	currency
	Properties
	Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The amount of tax for the debit note.
	This field is a calculated field.
blngTaxCityc	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The city of the address that Salesforce Billing uses to calculate tax for the debit note.
blngTaxCountryc	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The country of the address that Salesforce Billing uses to calculate tax for the debit note.
blngTaxErrorMessagec	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The error message when the external tax engine fails to calculate tax for the debit note.
blng TaxState c	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The state of the address that Salesforce Billing uses to calculate tax for the debit note.

Field	Details
blngTaxStreet2c	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The street of the address that Salesforce Billing uses to calculate tax for the debit note.
blngTaxStreetc	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The street of the address that Salesforce Billing uses to calculate tax for the debit note.
blngTaxZipCodec	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The postal code of the address that Salesforce Billing uses to calculate tax for the debit note.
blngTotalAmountc	Туре
	currency
	Properties
	Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The total amount of the debit note.
	This field is a calculated field.
blng_TotalAvailableForAllocation_c	Туре
	currency
	Properties
	Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The total amount of the debit note that's available for allocation. This amount is calculated by deducting the debit note's total net allocations from the total amount.
	This field is a calculated field.
blng_TotalNetAllocations_c	Туре
· 	currency
	··· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·

Field	Details
	Properties Filter Nillable Cort
	Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The amount that's been allocated by the credit note that's associated with the debit note. The total net allocations are calculated by summing up the net credit note and invoice allocations.
	This field is a calculated field.
blngUnallocationsc	^C Type
	currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The amount that's been unallocated by the debit note.
	This field is a calculated field.

blng__DebitNoteLine__c

Represents information about the amount that's allocated to increase the balance of an invoice line.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(),
retrieve(), search(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Field	Details
CurrencyIsoCode	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the debit note line.
	The default value is USD.
Name	Type string

Field	Details
	Properties Autonumber, Defaulted on create, Filter, idLookup, Sort
	Description The name of the debit note line.
blng_AllocatedRevenueAmount_c	Type currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The debit note's revenue amount that's allocated to invoice lines.
blngAllocationsc	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The debit note's amount that's allocated to invoice lines, excluding tax. This field is a calculated field.
blngAvailableBalancec	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description Amount of the debit note line that's available for allocation or refund. The balance is calculated using the formula
	<pre>blngTotalAmountc - blngNetPaymentAllocationsc - blngInvoiceLineNetAllocationsc - blngCreditNoteLineNetAllocationsc</pre>
	This field is a calculated field.
blng_AvailableForPayment_c	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort

Field Details Description The amount from the debit note line that's available for payment. This amount is calculated using the formula blng TotalPaymentAmount c - blng TotalRefundAmount c blng NetPaymentAllocations c This field is a calculated field. blng_BaseCurrencyAmount_c Type currency **Properties** Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update Description The debit note line's total amount in the base currency. blng_BaseCurrencyFXDate_c Type date **Properties** Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update The date used to determine the foreign exchange rate when calculating the base currency amount. blng_BaseCurrencyFXRate__c Type double **Properties** Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update Description The foreign exchange rate that's used to convert the debit note line's total amount to the base currency amount. blng__BaseCurrency__c Type string **Properties** Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

The base currency that's used for converting currency during data export.

Description

reference

blng BillToAccount c

Field	Details
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The account that receives information about the debit note line.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngBillToAccountr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To Account
blngBillToContactc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The user who receives information about the debit note line. This value is inherited from the account's Bill to Contact field.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngBillToContactr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To Contact
blng_BillingFinanceBook_c	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The finance book associated with the related debit note.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngBillingFinanceBookr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngFinanceBookc

Field	Details
blngBillingGLRulec	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The General Ledger (GL) rule that's used to determine the GL accounts for the invoice line associated with the debit note line.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngBillingGLRuler
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngGLRulec
blng_BillingGLTreatment_c	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The billing treatment associated with the billing General Ledger (GL) rule of the debit note line.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngBillingGLTreatmentr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngGLTreatmentc
blngBillingRulec	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The billing rule associated with the debit note line.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngBillingRuler
	Relationship Type Lookup

Field	Details
	Refers To blngBillingRulec
blngBillingTreatmentc	Туре
	reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The billing treatment associated with the debit note line.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngBillingTreatmentr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngBillingTreatmentc
blngCalculateTaxc	Type boolean
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description This field indicates whether tax must be calculated for the debit note line.
	The default value is false.
blng_CreditiVoteLineAllocations_c	Туре
	currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The amount allocated from all the related credit note lines.
	This field is a calculated field.
blng_CreditiVoteLineVetAllocations_c	Туре
	currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The total amount allocated from all the related credit note lines.
	This field is a calculated field.

Field	Details
blng CreditNoteLineUnallocations c	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The amount that's unallocated from all the related credit note lines.
	This field is a calculated field.
blngDebitNoteLineDatec	Type date
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The date when the debit note line was posted.
blngDebitNotec	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Sort
	Description The debit note associated with the debit note line.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngDebitNoter
	Relationship Type Master-detail
	Refers To blngDebitNotec
blngEffectiveTaxDatec	Type date
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The date when the tax is applied to the debit note line.
blngEndDatec	Туре
	date
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description The end date of the debit note line.
blngFinancePeriodc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The finance period associated with the debit note line.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngFinancePeriodr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngFinancePeriodc
blngImpactAmountc	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The debit note line's financial impact against the customer's accounts receivable. When the debit note line is applied, the impact amount is equivalent to the debit note line's total amount.
	This field is a calculated field.
blng_InvoiceLineNetAllocations_c	Турс
	Currency Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The amount from the debit note line that's allocated to an invoice line. This amount is calculated by deducting the debit note line's unallocated amount from its allocated amount.
	This field is a calculated field.
blng_legalEntityReference_c	Туре
	string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description The legal entity associated with the debit note line.
blngLegalEntityc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The legal entity associated with the debit note line.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngLegalEntityr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngLegalEntityc
blng_NetPaymentAllocations_c	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The total amount of the debit note line that's allocated to payments. The net payment allocations are calculated by deducting the debit note line's refund amount from its payment amount.
	This field is a calculated field.
	Formula
	blngPaymentsc - blngRefundsc
blngNotesc	Type textarea
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description Additional details about the debit note line.
blng_OverriceInitialReverueFnDate_c	Туре
	date
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description The date that overrides the revenue end date of the revenue schedule associated with the debit note line.
blmg_OverrideInitialRevenueStartDate_c	Type date
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The date that overrides the revenue start date of the revenue schedule associated with the debit note line.
blngPaymentBalancec	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The amount of the debit note line after excluding payments and refunds.
	This field is a calculated field.
blngPayments1c	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The payment made from the debit note line's amount after deducting the refund amount.
	This field is a calculated field.
blngPaymentsc	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The payment made from the debit note line's amount.
	This field is a calculated field.
blngProductNamec	Type
	String Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description The name of the product associated with the debit note line.
blngProductc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The product associated with the debit note line.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngProductr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To Product2
blngRefundsc	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The amount of the debit note line that's been refunded.
	This field is a calculated field.
blng_RevenueAgreementMatchingID_c	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description This field is used to group debit note lines with the same revenue agreement matching ID.
blng_RevenueExpectedAmount_c	Type currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The expected revenue impact of the related credit note line.
blng_RevenueLiabilityAmount_c	1,765
	currency

Field	Details
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update Description The revenue liability of the related credit note line.
blng_RevenueVostLikelyAmount_c	Type currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The most likely revenue impact of the related credit note line for revenue calculations when the revenue amount is uncertain.
blng_RevenueScheduleStatus_c	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description Specifies the status of the revenue schedule associated with the debit note line.
	Possible values are:
	• Complete
	• Error • Queued
blng_RevenueTransactionAmount_c	Type currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The amount of the revenue transaction that's associated with the debit note line.
blng_RevenueTransactionPrice_c	Туре
	Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The price of the revenue transaction that's associated with the debit note line.
blng_StandaloneSellingAmount_c	Type currency

Field	Details
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The amount of the standalone order that's associated with the debit note line.
blng_StandaloneSellingPrice_c	Type currency
	,
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The price of the standalone order that's associated with the debit note line.
blngStartDatec	Туре
	date
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The start date of the debit note line.
blngStatusc	Type picklist
	•
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description
	Specifies the status of the debit note line.
	Possible values are:
	• Cancelled
	• Draft
	• Posted
	The default value is Draft.
blng_Subtotal_c	Туре
	currency
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Sort, Update
	Description
	The amount of the debit note line, excluding tax, that's not refunded. The subtotal is calculated
	by deducting the refund amount from the debit note line's amount.
blngTaxAmountc	Туре
	currency

Field	Details
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The amount of tax for the debit note line.
blngTaxCityc	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The city of the address that Salesforce Billing uses to calculate tax for the debit note line.
blngTaxCountryc	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The country of the address that Salesforce Billing uses to calculate tax for the debit note line.
blngTaxErrorMessagec	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The error message when the external tax engine fails to calculate tax for the debit note line.
blngTaxGLRulec	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The tax rule for recording tax transactions of the debit note line in an external general ledger.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngTaxGLRuler
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngGLRulec

Field	Details
blngTaxGLTreatmentc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The tax treatment for recording tax transactions of the debit note line in an external general ledger.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngTaxGLTreatmentr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngGLTreatmentc
blng_TaxPercentageApplied_c	Type percent
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The percentage of tax that was applied to the debit note line.
blngTaxRulec	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The rule used to tax the debit note line.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngTaxRuler
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngTaxRulec
blngTaxStatec	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description The state of the address that Salesforce Billing uses to calculate tax for the debit note line.
blngTaxStatusc	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description Specifies the status of the tax calculation.
	Possible values are:
	• Completed
	• Error
	• Processing
	• Queued
	• Warning
blngTaxStreet2c	Type string
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The street of the address that Salesforce Billing uses to calculate tax for the debit note line.
blngTaxStreetc	Туре
	string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The street of the address that Salesforce Billing uses to calculate tax for the debit note line.
blngTaxTreatmentc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The tax treatment that's assigned to the debit note line. Tax rules and their treatments define how Salesforce Billing processes tax for your transactions.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngTaxTreatmentr

Field	Details
	Relationship Type
	Lookup
	Refers To
	blngTaxTreatmentc
blngTaxZipCodec	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The postal code of the address that Salesforce Billing uses to calculate tax for the debit note line.
blngTotalAmountc	Туре
	currency
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The total amount of the debit note line.
blrg_TotalAvailableForAllocation_o	[©] Type
	currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The total amount of the debit note line that's available for allocation. This amount is calculated by using the formula
	blngTotalAmountc - blngTotalNetAllocationsc
	This field is a calculated field.
blngTotalNetAllocationsc	^C Type
	currency
	Properties
	Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The amount allocated by the credit note that's associated with the debit note line.
	This field is a calculated field.
blngTotalPaymentAmountc	Туре
	currency

Field	Details
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The total amount that's been paid by using the debit note line.
	This field is a calculated field.
blngTotalRefundAmountc	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The total amount that's been refunded to the debit note line.
	This field is a calculated field.
blngUnallocationsc	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The amount that's been unallocated from the debit note line.
	This field is a calculated field.

blng__FinanceBook__c

Represents the storage of financial transactions for reporting and recordkeeping.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(),
retrieve(), search(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Field	Details
CurrencyIsoCode	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the finance book record when multiple currencies are enabled.
LastReferencedDate	Type dateTime
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The timestamp when the current user last accessed a finance book record indirectly, for example, through a list view or related record.
LastViewedDate	Type dateTime
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The timestamp when the current user last viewed a finance book record. If this value is null, it's possible that the user only accessed the finance book record or a related list view (LastReferencedDate), but not viewed the finance book record itself.
Name	Type string
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The name of the finance book.
OwnerId	Type reference
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Required. The ID of the record owner.
	This field is a polymorphic relationship field.
	Relationship Name Owner
	Refers To Group, User
blngActivec	Type boolean

Field	Details
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Required. Indicates whether the finance book is active (true) or not (false). To deactivate the finance book, clear the Active checkbox. This setting won't affect past or existing transactions or assignments.
	The default value is true.
blng_FinancePeriodDuration_	_ ^C Type picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description Required. The duration of the finance period date range.
	Valid values are:
	• Custom
	• Monthly
	The default value is Monthly.
blngNotesc	Type textarea
	Properties
	Create, Nillable, Update
	Description Additional details or comments related to the finance book.
blngPeriodTypec	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description Required. The type of finance book.
	Valid values are:
	• Accounting
	• Revenue

blng__FinancePeriod__c

Represents a reference object that stores lookups to all accounting or revenue transactions that occur within a specific period.



(Important: Where possible, we changed noninclusive terms to align with our company value of Equality. We maintained certain terms to avoid any effect on customer implementations.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(), retrieve(), search(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Field	Details
CurrencyIsoCode	Туре
	picklist
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description
	The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the finance period record when multiple currencies are enabled.
LastReferencedDate	Type dateTime
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The timestamp when the current user last accessed a finance period record indirectly, for example, through a list view or related record.
LastViewedDate	Туре
	dateTime
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The timestamp when the current user last viewed a finance period record. If this value is null, it's possible that the user only accessed the finance period record or a related list view (LastReferencedDate), but not viewed the finance period record itself.
Name	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The name of the finance period.

Field	Details
blngFamilyc	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The product family associated with the finance period record.
blngFinanceBookc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Sort
	Description Required. The financial book associated with the billing. This field helps in categorizing and managing financial records according to different finance books.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngFinanceBookr
	Relationship Type Master-detail
	Refers To blngFinanceBookc (the master object)
blng_FinancePeriodFamily_c	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The finance period family associated with the finance period.
blngLegalEntityc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The legal entity used to associate the finance period with other transactional records in Salesforce Billing.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngLegalEntityr
	Refers To blngLegalEntityc

Field	Details
blngNextOpenPeriodc	Туре
	boolean
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Required. The next open financial period for billing purposes.
	The default value is false.
blngNotesc	Туре
	textarea
	Properties
	Create, Nillable, Update
	Description
	Additional details or comments related to the finance period.
blngPeriodEndDatec	Type date
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Required. The end date of the financial period.
blngPeriodStartDatec	Туре
	date
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description
	Required. The start date of the finance period.
blngPeriodStatusc	Type
	picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description
	Required. The status of a financial period to track the state of a financial period.
	Valid values are:
	• Closed
	• Error
	• Open
	<u> -</u>

• Pending Open Type string
string
Properties
Filter, Nillable, Sort
Description The period type of the finance book.
This field is a calculated field.
- - - - - - -
string
Properties
Create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update
Description
The reference to source for which the finance period record is created.
^Т уре
string
Properties
Create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update
Description
A unique identification number associated with the finance period record. This field is unique within your organization.

blng__GLAccount__c

Represents the accounting journal entries in a General Ledger (GL) account. You can define both a credit GL account and a debit GL account as endpoints for these entries. These GL accounts, along with all associated records, can later be exported to an external GL bookkeeping system.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(),
retrieve(), search(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Field	Details
CurrencyIsoCode	Туре
	picklist
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description
	The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the legacy entity when multiple currencies are enabled.
LastReferencedDate	Туре
	dateTime
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The timestamp when the current user last accessed a GL account record indirectly, for example, through a list view or related record.
LastViewedDate	Туре
	dateTime
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The timestamp when the current user last viewed a GL account record. If this value is null, it's possible that the user only accessed the GL account record or a related list view (LastReferencedDate), but not viewed the GL account record itself.
Name	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The page of the Classeupt
	The name of the GL account.
OwnerId	Туре
	reference
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description
	Required. The ID of the record owner.
	This field is a polymorphic relationship field.

Field	Details
	Relationship Name Owner
	Refers To Group, User
blngActivec	Type boolean
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Required. Indicates whether the GL account is active (true) or not (false). To deactivate the GL account, clear the Active checkbox. This setting won't affect past or existing transactions or assignments. The default value is true.
blng_GLAccountDescription_c	Туре
	textarea
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description The purpose and usage of a GL account.
blngGLAccountNumberc	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Required. The number that's used to organize the details about the GL account.
blngNotesc	Type textarea
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description Additional details or comments related to the GL account.

blng__GLRule__c

Represents how transactions are recorded and categorized in the General Ledger (GL).

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(),
retrieve(), search(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Field	Details
CurrencyIsoCode	Туре
	picklist
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description
	The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the GL when multiple currencies are enabled.
LastReferencedDate	Туре
	dateTime
	Properties
	Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The timestamp when the current user last accessed a GL rule record indirectly, for example, through a list view or related record.
LastViewedDate	Туре
	dateTime
	Properties
	Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The timestamp when the current user last viewed a GL rule record. If this value is null, it's
	possible that the user only accessed the GL rule record or a related list view (LastReferencedDate), but not viewed the GL rule record itself.
Name	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The name of the GL rule.
OwnerId	Туре
	reference

Field	Details
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Required. The ID of the record owner.
	This field is a polymorphic relationship field.
	Relationship Name Owner
	Refers To Group, User
blngActivec	Type boolean
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Required. Indicates whether the GL rule is active (true) or not (false). To deactivate the GL rule, clear the Active checkbox. This setting won't affect past or existing transactions or assignments. The default value is true.
blngNotesc	Туре
	textarea
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description Additional details or comments related to the GL rule.

blng__GLTreatment__c

Represents the lookups to a credit General Ledger (GL) account and a debit GL account. These lookups establish a relationship between your transaction and your GL accounts.

(1)

Important: Where possible, we changed noninclusive terms to align with our company value of Equality. We maintained certain terms to avoid any effect on customer implementations.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(),
retrieve(), search(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Field	Details
CurrencyIsoCode	Туре
	picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the General Ledger (GL) treatment when multiple currencies are enabled.
LastReferencedDate	Туре
	dateTime
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The timestamp when the current user last accessed a GL treatment record indirectly, for example, through a list view or related record.
LastViewedDate	Туре
	dateTime
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The timestamp when the current user last viewed a GL treatment record. If this value is null, it's possible that the user only accessed the GL treatment record or a related list view (LastReferencedDate), but not viewed the GL treatment record itself.
Name	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The name of the GL treatment.
blngActivec	Type boolean
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description
	Required. Indicates whether the GL treatment is active (true) or not (false). To deactivate the GL treatment, clear the Active checkbox. This setting won't affect past or existing transactions or assignments. The default value is true.

Field	Details
blngCreditGLAccountc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The credit GL account transactions associated with the GL treatment.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngCreditGLAccountr
	Refers To blngGLAccountc
blngDebitGLAccountc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The debit GL account transactions associated with the GL treatment.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngDebitGLAccountr
	Refers To blngGLAccountc
blngGLLegalEntityc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The legal entity associated with the GL treatment.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name
	blngGLLegalEntityr
	Refers To
	blngLegalEntityc
blngGLRulec	Туре
	reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Sort

Field	Details
	Description Required. Specifies how Salesforce Billing logs transactional data to the finance books. A GL rule includes a list of GL treatments.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngGLRuler
	Relationship Type Master-detail
	Refers To blngGLRulec (the master object)
blngNotesc	Type textarea
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description Additional details or comments related to the GL treatment.
blngUniqueIdc	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The unique identification number associated with the general ledger treatment record. This field is unique within your organization.

blng__Invoice__c

Represents a financial document describing the total amount a buyer must pay for provided goods or services.

(1) Important: Where possible, we changed noninclusive terms to align with our company value of Equality. We maintained certain terms to avoid any effect on customer implementations.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(),
retrieve(), search(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Field	Details
CurrencyIsoCode	Туре
	picklist
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the invoice when multiple currencies are enabled.
Custom_Lockc	Type picklist
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description
	Specifies whether the invoice is locked or unlocked.
	Valid values are:
	• Locked
	• Unlocked
	The default value is Unlocked.
LastActivityDate	Туре
	date
	Properties
	Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The timestamp of when a user had last associated a task or event action with the invoice.
LastReferencedDate	Type dateTime
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The timestamp of when the current user had last accessed the invoice, or a record or list view related to the invoice.
LastViewedDate	Туре
	dateTime
	Properties
	Filter, Nillable, Sort

Field	Details
	Description The timestamp when a user last viewed this record, a record related to this record, or a list view. If this value is null, it's possible the user accessed this record or list view (LastReferencedDate) but didn't view it.
Name	Type string
	Properties Autonumber, Defaulted on create, Filter, idLookup, Sort
	Description The name of the invoice.
blngARStatusc	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description Shows whether the invoice has been credited, or canceled and rebilled. Valid values are:
	Cancel and RebillCredited
blngAccountc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Sort
	Description The invoice's parent account that's inherited from the order product. This is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngAccountr
	Relationship Type Master-detail
	Refers To Account (the master object)
blng_Action_c	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update

Details Field Description Specifies whether a user has credited the invoice by either selecting the **Cancel** and **Rebill** button or the **Credit** button. Valid values are: Cancel and Rebill Credit blng__Balance__c Type currency **Properties** Filter, Nillable, Sort Description The sum of balances of all the related invoice lines. This amount is equal to the invoice's total amount with tax, after deducting the payments and adjustments made. This is a calculated field. blng BaseCurrencyAmount c Type currency **Properties** Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update Description If you have currency conversion requirements, you can define your base currency amount here. When you export your data, you can use this value in your conversions. blng BaseCurrencyFXDate c Type date **Properties** Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update If you have currency conversion requirements, you can define your base currency foreign exchange (FX) date here. When you export your data, you can use this value in your conversions. blng_BaseCurrencyFXRate_c Type double **Properties** Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update Description If you have currency conversion requirements, you can define your base currency FX rate here. When you export your data, you can use this value in your conversions.

Field	Details
blngBaseCurrencyc	Туре
	string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description If you have currency conversion requirements, you can define your base currency here.
blngBillToContactc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The user who receives information about the invoice. This is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngBillToContactr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To Contact
blng_CorrectiveAction_c	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description When this field has a value of Action Required, the invoice is locked from receiving payments until the issue defined in the Last Payment Run Processing Message field is resolved.
	•
blngCreditsc	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The sum of credit notes allocated against the invoice and its invoice lines. Sum of all credit note amounts applied to this invoice. This is a calculated field.
blngDaysOutstandingc	Туре
	double

Field	Details
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The number of days past the invoice due date.
blngDebitPaymentsc	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The sum of payments made to debit notes allocated against the invoice and its invoice lines. This is a calculated field.
blngDebitsc	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The sum of debit notes allocated against the invoice and its invoice lines. This is a calculated field.
blng_DeclinedPaymentRunCount_c	Type double
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description Salesforce Billing doesn't populate this field by default. You can add your own customization to it when you want to track the number of times a payment run that targets the invoice has been unable to pay it.
blngDefaultPaymentTypec	Type
	string Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description Used in payment runs. A payment run picks up an invoice when the run and the invoice have matching Default Payment Type values. This is a calculated field.
blngDueDatec	Type date
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description The date by which customers must pay their invoice. This field is provided for users who want to add their own due date and collections features for AR and AP.
blngImpactAmountc	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description Inherits the value of the invoice's total amount. This field is provided for users who must monitor impact amounts separately as part of their billing and collections processes. This is a calculated field.
blngInvoiceDatec	Type date
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The date the invoice was created either by the bill now process or an invoice run.
blngInvoiceLockedc	Type boolean
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Indicates whether the invoice is locked (true) or not (false). Before unlocking it, check whether a payment has already been created against this invoice. The default value is false.
blngInvoicePostedDatec	Type date
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The date the invoice was posted.
blng_InvoiceRunCreatedBy_c	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description Specifies the invoice run that created the invoice. This is a relationship field.

Field	Details
	Relationship Name blngInvoiceRunCreatedByr Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngInvoiceRunc
blngInvoiceStatusc	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The state of the invoice. Valid values are:
	CancelledDraft
	• Error
	InitiatedPost In progress
	PostedRebilled
	The default value is Draft.
blngLastPaymentRunIdc	Type
	reference Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description Specifies the most recent payment run that evaluated the invoice for payment. This is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngLastPaymentRunIdr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngPaymentRunc
blng_LastPayvertRnProcessingVessage_c	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description If a payment run that targeted the invoice encountered an issue, this field shows information on how to correct the issue and unlock the invoice for receiving payments.
blng_NegativeLineConversion_c	1,760
	Currency Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The sum of all Negative Line Conversion fields on the invoice's invoice lines. This is a calculated field.
blngNotesc	Type textarea
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description Specifies any additional notes and information from a user.
blng_NumberOfInvoiceLines_c	Type double
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The total number of invoice lines. This is a calculated field.
blng_Order_c	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description Populated only when Bill Now is used to create the invoice, or during an invoice run if the order product Invoice Group field has a value of Order. This is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngOrderr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To Order
blngPaymentBatchc	Type picklist

Field Details

Properties

Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update

Description

If a payment scheduler has a payment batch value, the payment run evaluates only invoices with matching payment batch values. If this field is null, payment runs evaluate the invoice only if the payment run's batch is also null.

blng PaymentMethod c

Type

reference

Properties

Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Description

Payment methods store Automated Clearing House (ACH) or credit card details for a customer, and the payment gateway that accepts payments. This is a relationship field.

Relationship Name

blng__PaymentMethod__r

Relationship Type

Lookup

Refers To

blng__PaymentMethod__c

blng PaymentProcessStatus c

Type

picklist

Properties

Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update

Description

The status of the payment process. Valid values are:

- Completed
- Failed
- Processing
- Started

blng PaymentRunId c

Type

reference

Properties

Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Description

The ID of the payment run that evaluated and made payment against the invoice. This is a relationship field.

Relationship Name

blng__PaymentRunId__r

Field	Details
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngPaymentRunc
bling_PaymentRinProcessingMessage_c	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description This field doesn't have any functionality by default.
blngPaymentStatusc	Type string
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description A formula field that shows Paid when the invoice balance is zero (0). If payments are applied but there's still a balance, the formula returns Partially Paid. If there are no payments applied, then the field shows Unpaid. If only credit notes are allocated to an invoice and the balance is still positive, the payment status remains Unpaid. Only applying payments to the invoice can change the status to Partially Paid. If this is a requirement, create a custom field. This is a calculated field.
blng_PaymentsAgainstInvoiceLines_c	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description Net amount of payments against the invoice line in the invoice. This is a calculated field.
blng_PaymentsAgainstInvoice_c	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The sum of payment amount allocated to the invoice header. This field is used only when not using line level allocations. This is a calculated field.
blngPaymentsc	Type currency

Field	Details
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort Description The number of payments made against this invoice. This is a calculated field.
blng_RefundsAgainstInvoiceLines_c	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description Cancellations of previous allocations to the invoice lines. This is a calculated field.
blng_RefundsAgainstInvoice_c	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description Cancellations of previous allocations to the invoice. This is a calculated field.
blngStatusFlagc	Type string
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description Specifies the status of the invoice, with different color codes representing each status. Valid values are:
	Orange— Active with balance
	Green— No balance due
	• White— Canceled
	This is a calculated field.
blngSubtotalc	Туре
	Currency Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The amount to settle on this invoice, excluding tax. This is a calculated field.
blngTargetDatec	Type date

Field	Details
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The earliest date for invoicing.
blngTaxAmountc	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The sum of all taxes for this invoice. This is a calculated field.
blngTaxErrorMessagec	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The notification about the issue related to taxes on the invoice.
blngTaxErrorsc	Type double
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description Specifies a problem with the tax details associated with the invoice. This is a calculated field.
blngTaxStatusc	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The type of tax treatment this invoice qualifies for. Valid values are:
	• Cancelled
	• Completed
	ErrorPosted
	• Queued
blngTotalAmountc	Туре
	currency

Field	Details
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The total amount to be invoiced, including tax. This is a calculated field.
blngUniqueIdc	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The unique identification number associated with this invoice. This field has unique set to true. This field is unique within your organization.

blng__InvoiceLine__c

Represents the amount that a buyer must pay for a product, service, or fee. Invoice lines are created based on the amount of an order line.



Important: Where possible, we changed noninclusive terms to align with our company value of Equality. We maintained certain terms to avoid any effect on customer implementations.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(),
retrieve(), search(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Field	Details
AVA_BLNGInvoice_Message	^e _C Type
	textarea
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description A summary of the invoice.
CurrencyIsoCode	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the invoice line when multiple currencies are enabled.
LastActivityDate	Type date
	Properties Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort
	Description The timestamp of when a user had last associated a task or event action with the invoice line.
Name	Type string
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The name of the invoice line.
blngARStatusc	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description Specifies whether the invoice line has been credited, or canceled and rebilled. Valid values are: • Cancel and Rebill
	• Credited
blng_AllocatedRevenueAmount_c	Type currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The total revenue impact of this invoice line. Possible scenarios of the allocated revenue amount:
	Can differ from the subtotal and total amount (with tax).
	Used when reallocating revenue among several transactions. Can be configured to greate revenue schedules for this invaise line using this field as the
	 Can be configured to create revenue schedules for this invoice line using this field as the amount.

Field	Details
blng_Assetc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description Inherited by default from the Lifecycle-Managed Asset field on the invoice line's parent order product. This field can be overridden with a different asset. This is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngAssetr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To Asset
blngBalancec	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The total amount of the invoice that isn't settled, which equals total amount (with tax) — allocations + unallocations. This is a calculated field.
blng_BalancewithoutDebits_c	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The total amount of the invoice that isn't settled, excluding debit note allocations. The balance without debits amount equals the total amount (with tax) — payments + unallocations against invoice lines — credits. This is a calculated field.
blng_BaseCurrencyAmount_c	Type currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The credit note line's total amount, converted into the base currency.
blng_BaseCurrencyFXDatec	Type date

Field	Details
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The date used to determine the foreign exchange rate when calculating the base currency amount.
blng_BaseCurrencyFXRatec	Type double
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The FX rate used to convert the credit note amount to the base currency amount.
blngBaseCurrencyc	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The base currency of this credit note line that's used for reporting purposes.
blng_BillingFinanceBook_c	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description This invoice line's transactions report to this finance book. This is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngBillingFinanceBookr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngFinanceBookc
blng_BillingFinancePeriod_c	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The invoice line's transactions report to a finance period within the finance book. This is a relationship field.

Field Details Relationship Name blng__BillingFinancePeriod__r **Relationship Type** Lookup **Refers To** blng__FinancePeriod__c blng BillingFrequency_c picklist **Properties** Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update Description Indicates how frequently Salesforce Billing invoices the invoice line's originating order product. Valid values are: Annual Invoice Plan Monthly Quarterly Semiannual blng BillingGLRule c Type reference **Properties** Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update Description Defines the general ledger (GL) treatment for this invoice line. This is a relationship field. **Relationship Name** blng__BillingGLRule__r **Relationship Type** Lookup **Refers To** blng__GLRule__c blng_BillingGLTreatment_c Type reference **Properties** Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update Description Defines the debit and credit GL accounts that record this invoice line. This is a relationship field.

Field	Details
	Relationship Name blngBillingGLTreatmentr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngGLTreatmentc
blngBillingRulec	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The lookup to the billing rule used to generate this invoice line. This is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngBillingRuler
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngBillingRulec
blng_BillingTransactionc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The billing transaction associated with the invoice line. This is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngBillingTransactionr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngBillingTransactionc
blng_BillingTreatment_c	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The lookup to the billing treatment used to generate this invoice line. This is a relationship field.

Field	Details
	Relationship Name blngBillingTreatmentr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngBillingTreatmentc
blng_CalculatedQuantity_c	Type double
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The number of billing periods charged on the invoice line.
blngChargeDatec	Type date
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description Specifies the transaction date of the invoice line.
blngChargeTypec	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	 Description Specifies if the invoice line is recurring, one-time, or usage (legacy). Possible values are: One-Time Recurring
	• Usage
blng_ConvertedCreditNoteLine_c	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description For converted negative invoice lines, the credit note line is created as part of the conversion. This is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngConvertedCreditNoteLiner

Field	Details
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngCreditNoteLinec
blngCreditsc	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The sum of all credit note lines allocated to this invoice line. This is a calculated field.
blngDaysPastDuec	Type double
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The number of days past the invoice line due date. This is a calculated field.
blngDebitPaymentsc	Туре
	currency Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The net amount of all payments made to debit note allocations on this invoice line. The debit payments equals the debits (payment allocations) — debits (payment unallocations). This is a calculated field.
blng_DebitsPaymentAllocations_c	
	Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The sum of all payments made against the debit note allocated to this invoice line.
blng_DebitsPaymentUhallocations_c	Type currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The sum of all payments unallocated from debit notes allocated to this invoice line.

Field	Details
blngDebitsc	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The sum of all debit note lines allocated to this invoice line. This is a calculated field.
blngDueDatec	Type date
	Properties Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort
	Description The date by which customers must pay their invoice line. This is a calculated field.
blngEndDatec	Type date
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The end date of the billed period for this invoice line. This value can impact the revenue.
blngGroupedQuantityc	Type double
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description Salesforce Billing creates invoice lines for different groups of order products based on several order and order product fields.
blngImpactAmountc	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The change to net receivables as a result of this credit note line. Positive credit note lines have a negative impact amount because they reduce the overall amount owed to the company. This is a calculated field.
blngInvoiceLineStatec	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description
	Specifies if the invoice line is marked. Valid values are:
	 Merged— The invoice line contains invoice sublines.
	 Regular— The invoice line is standard and doesn't include sublines.
	The default value is Regular.
blng_InvoiceLineStatus_c	² Type
	picklist
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description
	The status of the invoice line and is inherited from the invoice's status. Valid values are:
	• Cancelled
	• Draft
	• Error
	• Initiated
	• Post In progress
	• Posted
	• Rebilled
	The default value is Draft.
blngInvoiceRunc	Туре
	reference
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The invoice run that created this invoice line. This is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name
	blnglnvoiceRunr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To
	blngInvoiceRunc
blngInvoicec	Туре
	reference
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Sort
	Description

The parent invoice for this invoice line. This is a relationship field.

Field	Details
	Relationship Name blngInvoicer
	Relationship Type Master-detail
	Refers To blngInvoicec (the master object)
blng_LegalEntityReference_c	Туре
	string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
blngLegalEntityc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The lookup to this invoice line's legal entity. Legal entities control which treatments are associated with this invoice line. This is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngLegalEntityr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngLegalEntityc
blng_NegativeLineConversion_c	Type currency
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The total amount of this invoice that's converted to a credit note line. Only negative invoice lines are converted.
blng_NetAllocation=AgainstInvoiceLines_c	Туре
	currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort

Field	Details
	Description The net amount of all payments made against this invoice line, which equals (allocations against invoice lines) — (unallocations against invoice lines). This is a calculated field.
blngNotesc	Type textarea
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description Reference notes that users can add. Notes fields don't have associated system logic.
blngOrderProductc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The order product that generated the invoice line. This is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngOrderProductr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To OrderItem
blng_OvernideInitialRevenueFndDate_c	Type date
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description This field enables users to override the revenue period's configured end date when creating revenue schedules.
blng_CverriceTnitialRevenueStartTate_c	Type date
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description This field enables users to override the revenue period's configured start date when creating revenue schedules.
blng_RaynentsAgainstDebittVoteLines_c	Type currency

Field	Details
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The sum of payments made to debit notes allocated against the invoice and its invoice lines. This is a calculated field.
blng Payments-Against Invoice Lines c	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The total number of payment allocations made against the invoice lines. This is a calculated field.
blngPaymentsc	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The net amount of payments against this invoice line and any of its allocated debit note lines, which equals the (amount allocated against invoice line) + (amount allocated against debit note lines) – (amount unallocated against invoice lines) – (amount unallocated against debit note lines). This is a calculated field.
blngProductc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description Product that created the order product being invoiced. This is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngProductr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To Product2
blngQuantityc	Type double
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update

blng_RevenueMostLikelyAmount_c Type

Field	Details
	Description Quantity invoiced from the order product.
blng_RefundsAgainstDebittNoteLines_c	Туре
	currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description This field is a calculated field.
blng_RefundsAgainstInvoiceLines_c	Турс
	Currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description This field is a calculated field.
blng_RevenueExpectedAmount_c	Type currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description This user-defined field is the expected revenue impact of this credit note line, if different from the credit note line amount. The revenue expected amount can:
	Differ from the subtotal and total amount (with tax).
	• Be configured to create revenue schedules for this credit note line using this field as the amount on the revenue schedule.
blng_RevenueLiabilityAmount_c	Type currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description This user-defined field is the revenue liability associated with this credit note line. The revenue liability amount can:
	 Differ from the subtotal and total amount (with tax).
	• Be configured to create revenue schedules for this credit note line using this field as the amount on the revenue schedule.

currency

Field	Details
	Properties Standard Control of the National Control of
	Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description This user-defined field is the most likely revenue impact of this credit note line for revenue calculations when the revenue amount is uncertain. This field can differ from the subtotal and total amount (with tax).
blng_RevenueScheduleStatus_c	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description
	Specifies the status of the revenue schedule creation for this invoice line. Valid values are:
	• Complete
	• Error
	• Queued
blngStartDatec	Type date
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The start date of the billed period for this invoice line. This value can impact the revenue. See Salesforce Help for details on revenue recognition.
blngSubtotalc	Type currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The total amount to settle on this invoice line, excluding tax.
blngTaxAmountc	Type currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The total tax owed on this invoice line.
blngTaxCityc	Туре

Field	Details
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The city used during tax calculation. The invoice's tax address fields are used only if the invoice line's tax address fields are blank.
blngTaxCountryc	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The country used during tax calculation. The invoice's tax address fields are used only if the invoice line's tax address fields are blank.
blngTaxCountyc	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The county used during tax calculation. The invoice's tax address fields are used only if the invoice line's tax address fields are blank.
blngTaxErrorMessagec	Туре
	string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description Descriptions of errors that occur during tax calculation.
blngTaxErrorc	Type double
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description Specifies a problem with the tax details associated with the invoice line. This is a calculated field.
blngTaxGLRulec	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description The lookup to the GL rule that defines the GL treatment of the tax for this invoice line. This is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngTaxGLRuler
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngGLRulec
blngTaxGLTreatmentc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The lookup to the GL treatment that defines the debit and credit GL accounts used to record the tax for this invoice line. This is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngTaxGLTreatmentr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngGLTreatmentc
blngTaxLocationCodec	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The location code used during tax calculation. The invoice's tax address fields are used only if the invoice line's tax address fields are blank.
blng_TaxPercentageApplied_c	Type percent
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The total tax percentage applied to the invoice line and is null if the line is nontaxable.
blngTaxRulec	Type reference

Field Details

Properties

Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Description

Lookup to the tax rule that defines the tax engine and tax data, such as address and date, to use when calculating tax for this invoice line. This is a relationship field.

Relationship Name

blng__TaxRule__r

Relationship Type

Lookup

Refers To

blng__TaxRule__c

blng TaxState c

Type

string

Properties

Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Description

The state used during tax calculation. The invoice's tax address fields are used only if the invoice line's tax address fields are blank.

blng TaxStatus c

Type

picklist

Properties

Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update

Description

The status of the tax calculation for this invoice line. Valid values are:

- Completed
- Copied
- Error
- Processing
- Queued
- Warning

blng__TaxStreet2__c

Type

string

Properties

Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Description

The street address used during tax calculation. The invoice's tax address fields are used only if the invoice line's tax address fields are blank.

Field	Details
blngTaxStreetc	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The street address used during tax calculation. The invoice's tax address fields are used only if the invoice line's tax address fields are blank.
blngTaxTreatmentc	Type reference
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description Lookup to the tax treatment used to generate this invoice line. This is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngTaxTreatmentr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngTaxTreatmentc
blngTaxZipCodec	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The destination ZIP code or postal code used during tax calculation. The invoice's tax address fields are used only if the invoice line's tax address fields are blank.
blngTotalAmountc	Type currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The subtotal of the invoice line plus tax.
blngUniqueIdc	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description This field is system-generated and not updated or changed by users.
blngUnitPricec	Type currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The price of the order product.
blngUsageSummaryc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description Lookup to the usage summary that was used to create the invoice line and is blank unless the usage summary is the source for the invoice line. This is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngUsageSummaryr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngUsageSummaryc

blng__InvoicePlan__c

Provides billing schedules with customizable billing frequencies. The invoice plan allows for non-standard billing intervals, skipping traditional monthly or quarterly cycles. For instance, the first payment occurs ten days after the sale, with the second payment two months later.



Important: Where possible, we changed noninclusive terms to align with our company value of Equality. We maintained certain terms to avoid any effect on customer implementations.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(),
retrieve(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Field	Details
CurrencyIsoCode	Туре
	picklist
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with invoice plan when multiple currencies are enabled.
	ан енаини.
LastReferencedDate	Туре
	dateTime
	Properties
	Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The timestamp of when the current user had last accessed the invoice plan, or a record or list view related to the invoice plan.
LastViewedDate	Туре
	dateTime
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The timestamp when a user last viewed this record, a record related to this record, or a list
	view. If this value is null, it's possible the user accessed this record or list view (LastReferencedDate) but didn't view it.
Name	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The name of the invoice plan.
OwnerId	Туре
	reference
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description
	The user who owns the invoice plan record. This field is a polymorphic relationship field.
	Relationship Name
	Owner

Field	Details
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To Group, User
blngActivec	Type boolean
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Indicates whether the invoice plan is active (true) or not (false). The default value is true.
blng_BillingScheduleCreati	.cn_c Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description Billing schedules use predetermined dates to define when and how Salesforce Billing invoices an order product. An invoice plan can be created with BillingScheduleCreation set to Order Product Activation or Manual. When BillingScheduleCreation is set to Order Product Activation, billing schedules and billing transactions are generated automatically. Valid values are:
	ManualOrder Product Activation

blng__InvoicePlanLine__c

Represents the custom behavior for a single invoice transaction. An invoice plan contains the invoice plan lines.



Important: Where possible, we changed noninclusive terms to align with our company value of Equality. We maintained certain terms to avoid any effect on customer implementations.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(),
retrieve(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Field	Details
CurrencyIsoCode	Туре
	picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with invoice plan line when multiple currencies are enabled.
Name	Type string
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The name of the invoice plan line.
blng_CommencementDateOffsetUnits_c	Туре
	picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description Required. The unit of time that defines the offset applied to the commencement date. Valid values are:
	• Days
	• Months
	• Years
blng_CammencementDateOffset_c	Туре
	double
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The number by which the invoice start date is adjusted to have an invoice plan line start date.
blngCommencementDatec	Туре
	picklist
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description Required. The start date of the invoice plan line cycle. The default value is Order Product Activation.
blngFlatAmountc	Type currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description A fixed amount billed each installment.
blngInvoicePlanc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Sort
	Description Required. The invoice plan related to the invoice plan line.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngInvoicePlanr
	Relationship Type Master-detail
	Refers To blngInvoicePlanc (the master object)
blngPercentagec	Type percent
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The percentage of total amount billed each installment.
blngProcessingOrderc	Type double
	Properties Create, Filter, Sort, Update
	Description Required. The process involved in fulfilling an order.
blngServicePeriodEndc	Type picklist

Field	Details
	Properties Croate Filter Croup Nillable Postricted picklist Cart Lindate
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description Specifies if the end date of the service is mentioned on the invoice plan line. Valid values
	are:
	Create without Date
	Order Product End Date
blng_ServicePeriodStart_c	Туре
	picklist
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description
	Specifies if the start date of the service is mentioned on the invoice plan line. Valid values are:
	Create without Date
	Order Product Activation
	• Order Product Creation
blngTypec	Туре
	picklist
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description
	Required. The type of amount displayed in the invoice plan line. Valid values are:
	• Flat Amount
	• Percent
	• Remainder

blng__InvoiceRun__c

During an invoice batch run, all billing schedules that meet the specified criteria are processed, resulting in the generation of invoices.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(),
retrieve(), search(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Field	Details
CurrencyIsoCode	Туре
	picklist
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the invoice run when multiple currencies are enabled.
LastActivityDate	Туре
	date
	Properties
	Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The timestamp of when a user had last associated a task or event action with the invoice
	run.
LastReferencedDate	Туре
	dateTime
	Properties
	Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The timestamp when the invoice run was last modified.
LastViewedDate	Туре
	dateTime
	Properties
	Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The timestamp when a user last viewed this record, a record related to this record, or a list
	view. If this value is null, it's possible the user accessed this record or list view (LastReferencedDate) but didn't view it.
Name	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The name of the invoice run.

Field	Details
OwnerId	Type reference
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description A system-generated field that specifies the ID of the user who created the BillingBatchScheduler record. This field is a polymorphic relationship field.
	Relationship Name Owner
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To Group, User
blngApexJobIdc	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description A unique job ID number that specifies the Apex job queue line status of the invoice run.
blngCleanUpStatusc	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description Clean-up invoice runs to correct any system errors, and reset order products and usage summaries. Valid values are:
	CompletedCompleted with errors
	• Started
blngCompletedTimec	Type dateTime
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The timestamp when the invoice run finished processing.
blngInvoiceDatec	Type date

Field	Details
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The invoice date stamp on the invoice run.
blng_InvoiceScheduler_c	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description A scheduled processing job triggered by the billing batch scheduler. This is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blnglnvoiceSchedulerr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngInvoiceSchedulerc
blngNotesc	Type textarea
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description Optional user-defined information about the scheduler.
blngPercentageCompletec	Type percent
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The percentage of completion of the invoice run.
blngProgressBarc	Type
	string Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description A horizontal progress bar displaying the completion status of the invoice run. This field is a calculated field.

Field	Details
blngStartTimec	Type dateTime
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The timestamp of when the invoice run started processing.
blngStatusIndicatorc	Туре
	string
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The color-coded visual status of the invoice run. This is a calculated field.
blngStatusc	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The state of the invoice run. Valid values are:
	• Completed
	Completed with errors
	• Started
	• Canceled
	• Failed
	• Stopped
	The default value is Started.
blngTargetDatec	Type date
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Billing schedules having the next billing date before this date is picked up for invoicing.

blng__InvoiceScheduler__c

Represents whether and when an order product gets invoiced.



(Important: Where possible, we changed noninclusive terms to align with our company value of Equality. We maintained certain terms to avoid any effect on customer implementations.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(), retrieve(), search(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Field	Details
CurrencyIsoCode	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the invoice scheduler when multiple currencies are enabled.
LastActivityDate	Type date
	Properties Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort
	Description The timestamp of when a user had last associated a task or event action with the invoice scheduler.
LastReferencedDate	Type dateTime
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The timestamp of when the current user had last accessed the invoice scheduler, or a record or list view related to the invoice scheduler.
LastViewedDate	Type dateTime
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	The timestamp when a user last viewed this record, a record related to this record, or a list view. If this value is null, it's possible the user accessed this record or list view (LastReferencedDate) but didn't view it.

Field	Details
Name	Туре
	string
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The name of the invoice scheduler.
OwnerId	Туре
	reference
	Properties 5th Control of the Contro
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description The ID of the record owner. This is a polymorphic relationship field.
	Relationship Name
	Owner
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To
	Group, User
blngApexJobIdc	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	A unique job ID number that specifies the Apex job queue line status of the invoice scheduler.
blng_AutomaticallyPostInvoices_c	² Туре
	boolean
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description
	Indicates whether the invoices must be posted automatically (true) or not (false). By
	default, the invoices are generated in draft state.
blngBillUsageChargesc	1,760
	boolean
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description Indicates whether the charge type of the order product is usage (true) or not (false). The default value is true.
blngEndOfMonthc	Type boolean
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Indicates whether the monthly invoice processing must start on the last day of the month (true) or not (false). If this field is set to true, the scheduler start date also maps to the monthly invoice processing day. The default value is false.
blng_IncludeAllCurrencies_c	Type boolean
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Indicates whether all the available invoice currencies are included for processing (true) or not (false). The default value is false.
blngInvoiceBatchesc	Type multipicklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Update
	Description The billing batches included for invoice processing.
blngInvoiceDatec	Type date
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The date the invoice was created.
blngInvoiceDayOfMonthc	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The start day of the invoice runs each month for monthly invoice runs.

Field	Details
blngInvoiceDayOfWeekc	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The start day of the invoice runs each week for weekly invoice runs.
blngNotesc	Type textarea
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description Reference notes that users can add. Notes fields don't have associated system logic.
blngStartDateTimec	Type dateTime
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The start date and time of the invoice scheduler.
blngTargetDatec	Type date
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The next billing date. Active order products, usage summaries, or billing transactions with billing schedules having the next billing date before this date is picked up for invoicing.
blngTargetDayOfMonthc	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The day of the month associated with the next billing date. Active order products, usage summaries, or billing transactions with billing schedules having the next billing date before this date is picked up for invoicing.
blngTargetDayOfWeekc	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description The day of the week associated with the next billing date. Active order products, usage summaries, or billing transactions with billing schedules having the next billing date before this date is picked up for invoicing.
blngTypec	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The frequency of the invoice scheduler run. Valid values are:
	• Daily
	MonthlyOnce
	• Weekly

blng__LegalEntity__c

Represents the way an organization is structured. An organization can be a single legal entity or it can comprise more than one legal entity.



(1) Important: Where possible, we changed noninclusive terms to align with our company value of Equality. We maintained certain terms to avoid any effect on customer implementations.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(), retrieve(), search(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Field	Details
CurrencyIsoCode	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the legacy entity when multiple currencies are enabled.

Field	Details
LastReferencedDate	Туре
	dateTime
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The timestamp for when the current user last viewed a record related to this record.
LastViewedDate	Type dateTime
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The timestamp for when the current user last viewed this record. If this value is null, it's possible that this record was referenced (LastReferencedDate) and not viewed.
Name	Type string
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The name of the legal entity.
OwnerId	Type reference
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description The ID of the record owner. This is a polymorphic relationship field.
	Relationship Name Owner
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To Group, User
blngActivec	Type boolean
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description Indicates whether the legal entity is active (true) or not (false). To deactivate the legal entity, clear the Active checkbox. This setting won't affect past or existing transactions or assignments. The default value is true.
blngCityc	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The city of the company that this legal entity represents.
blngCountryc	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The country of the company that this legal entity represents.
blngCountyc	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The county of the company that this legal entity represents.
blngLegalEntityNumberc	Type string
	Properties Autonumber, Defaulted on create, Filter, idLookup, Sort
	Description A system generated unique number for a legal entity.
blngNotesc	Type textarea
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description Specifies any additional notes and information from a user.
blngStatec	Type string

Field	Details
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The state of the company that this legal entity represents.
blngStreet1c	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The primary street of the company that this legal entity represents.
blngStreet2c	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description Any additional street details of the company that this legal entity represents.
blngZipPostalCodec	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The ZIP code or postal code of the company that this legal entity represents.

blng__Payment__c

Represents a single event when a shopper makes a payment. For credit cards, this event is a payment capture or payment sale, but it doesn't appear on the shopper's credit card statement.

①

Important: Where possible, we changed noninclusive terms to align with our company value of Equality. We maintained certain terms to avoid any effect on customer implementations.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(),
retrieve(), search(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Field	Details
CurrencyIsoCode	Туре
	picklist
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description
	Three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the payment record.
LastActivityDate	Туре
	date
	Properties
	Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The timestamp of when a user had last associated a task or event action with this record.
LastReferencedDate	Туре
	dateTime
	Properties
	Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The timestamp when the current user last accessed a payment record indirectly, for example, through a list view or related record.
LastViewedDate	Туре
	dateTime
	Properties
	Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The timestamp when the current user last viewed a payment record. If this value is null, it's
	possible that the user only accessed the payment record or a related list view
	(LastReferencedDate), but not viewed the payment record itself.
Name	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Autonumber, Defaulted on create, Filter, idLookup, Sort
	Description
	Required. The name of the payment record.
blngAccountc	Туре
	reference

Field	Details
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Required. The account of the customer who made the payment.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngAccountr
	Relationship Type Master-detail
	Refers To Account (the master object)
blng_AllocatedtoDebittVoteLines_c	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The assigned payments to the debit note lines within your account.
	This field is a calculated field.
blng_AllocatedtoInvoiceLines_c	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The assigned payments to the invoice lines within an account.
	This field is a calculated field.
blng_AllocatedtoInvoices_c	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The assigned payments to the invoice within an account.
	This field is a calculated field.
blng_AllocationStatus_c	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description Indicates whether a payment has been allocated to invoices, invoice lines, and debit note lines. A status of Fail means the payment has not yet been allocated.
blngAllocationsc	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The total sum of payments allocated to invoices, invoice lines, and debit note lines.
	This field is a calculated field.
blngAmountc	Type currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Sort, Update
	Description Required. The amount to be debited or captured.
blngBalancec	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The amount remaining after deducting the net applied amount from total amount.
	This field is a calculated field.
blngBankAccountNamec	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The bank account name of the customer who made the payment.
blng_BankAccountNumberc	Type open/ptodetring
	encryptedstring Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description The bank account number of the customer who made the payment.

Field	Details
blngBankAccountTypec	Type picklist
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description
	The bank account type of the customer who made the payment. Valid values are:
	• Business Checking
	• Checking
	• Savings
blngBankNamec	Type string
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The bank name of the customer who made the payment.
blngBankRoutingCodec	Туре
	string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The valid routing number of the bank of the customer, also called as the American Banker. Association (ABA) code.
blng_BaseCurrencyAmount_c	Туре
	currency
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The amount of the payment in the base currency of the organization. It's used to standardiz the amount across different currencies.
blng_BaseCurrencyFXDate_c	Туре
	date
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The date on which the Foreign Exchange (FX) rate is applied to convert an amount into the base currency.

Details Field blng BaseCurrencyFXRate c Type double **Properties** Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update Description The FX rate used to convert an amount from a foreign currency to the base currency. blng BaseCurrency c Type string **Properties** Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update Description The primary currency in which the financial transactions are recorded and reported. blng BillingFinanceBook c reference **Properties** Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update Description The financial ledger that tracks all transactions related to billing, including the allocation of payments to debit note lines. It ensures that all financial activities are accurately recorded and reported. This field is a relationship field. **Relationship Name** blng__BillingFinanceBook___r **Relationship Type** Lookup Refers To blng__FinanceBook__c blng BillingFinancePeriod c Type reference **Properties** Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update Description A specific time frame for financial reporting and accounting purposes. This field is a relationship field. **Relationship Name** blng__BillingFinancePeriod__r **Relationship Type** Lookup

Field	Details
	Refers To blngFinancePeriodc
blngCardCodeResponsec	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The response code from the card issuer. This code indicates the result of the authorization request for a credit card transaction.
blng_CardExpirationMonth_c	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The expiration month of a credit or debit card in the billing information. This information is sent from the payment gateway following a transaction request.
blngCardExpirationYearc	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The expiration year of a credit or debit card in the billing information. This information is sent from the payment gateway following a transaction request.
blngCardTypec	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The credit or debit card type in the billing information.
	Valid values are:
	American Express
	• Discover
	MastercardVisa
blngCheckDatec	Type date

Field	Details
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The date on which a check payment was issued or received.
blngCheckNumberc	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The check number issued in an external system for a refund.
blngFinancePeriodc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description A finance period stores lookups to all the accounting or revenue transactions associated with the payment that occurred within a period of time. This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngFinancePeriodr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngFinancePeriodc
blngGLRulec	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The accounting treatment for financial transactions, including which general ledger accounts to debit and credit.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blng_GLRuler
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngGLRulec

Field	Details
blngGLTreatmentc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The general ledger treatment defines how a financial transaction is recorded in the general ledger, specifying the accounts and the nature of the entries.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngGLTreatmentr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngGLTreatmentc
blngGatewayIDc	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description A unique transaction ID created by the payment gateway.
blngImpactAmountc	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The payment's financial impact against the customer's accounts receivable.
	This field is a calculated field.
blngInvoicec	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The invoice to which the payment has been applied or unapplied.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngInvoicer
	Relationship Type Lookup

Field	Details
	Refers To blngInvoicec
blngLegalEntityc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The legal entity used to associate the payment with other transactional records in Salesforce Billing.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngLegalEntityr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngLegalEntityc
blngNotesc	Type textarea
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description Additional information or comments related to the payment.
blngPaidByc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The customer who made a payment, the payment amount, and other details.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngPaidByr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To Contact
blng_PaymentAuthorization_	C Type reference

Field Details Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update Description The authorization record for this payment. If there's a delayed capture (when the capture occurs after the authorization), all captures must be made against a previously successful authorization transaction. This field is a relationship field. **Relationship Name** blng__PaymentAuthorization__r **Relationship Type** Lookup **Refers To** blng__PaymentAuthorization__c blng PaymentDate c Type date **Properties** Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update Description The date on which the payment was made. blng_PaymentDescription_c Type textarea **Properties** Create, Nillable, Update Description The additional details about the payment. blng PaymentGatewayToken c Type string **Properties** Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update Description A unique string of numbers that's used to process transactions without exposing the actual payment information. blng PaymentGateway c Type reference **Properties** Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Details Field Description ID of the payment gateway that processed the payment. If there's a delayed payment, the field is populated from the authorization record. This field is a relationship field. **Relationship Name** blng__PaymentGateway__r **Relationship Type** Lookup **Refers To** blng__PaymentGateway__c blng PaymentMethod c Type reference **Properties** Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update Description The payment method associated with the payment. This field is a relationship field. **Relationship Name** blng__PaymentMethod__r **Relationship Type** Lookup **Refers To** blng__PaymentMethod__c blng PaymentMode c Type picklist **Properties** Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update Description The mode of payment. Select Electronic if the payments are processed through Salesforce Billing and External to manually enter a payment that was processed outside of Salesforce. Valid values are: • Electronic External blng PaymentType c Type picklist **Properties** Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update

Field Details

Description

The payment type for a payment.

Valid values are:

- ACH
- Bank Transfer
- Cash
- Check
- Credit Card

blng_RefundsAllocations_c Type

currency

Properties

Filter, Nillable, Sort

Description

The total refund that has been allocated against this payment. This field is a calculated field.

blng RefundsUnallocations c

Type

currency

Properties

Filter, Nillable, Sort

Description

The total number of a previously applied refund that has since been unapplied from this payment. This field is a calculated field.

blng Refunds c

Type

currency

Properties

Filter, Nillable, Sort

Description

A refund that's applied to a payment.

This field is a calculated field.

blng_RequestCreditCardNumber_c Type

string

Properties

Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Description

A tokenized version of the credit card number sent to the customer bank within the transaction request. Salesforce Billing doesn't store credit card numbers or other sensitive customer payment information. Instead, it stores tokenized versions of that information and sends the tokens to the external payment gateway.

Field Details blng RequestTypeOfPayment c Type string **Properties** Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update Description The type of payment action requested of the customer bank: authorization, charge, void, or refund. blng Status c Type picklist **Properties** Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update Description The status of the payment transaction. Valid values are: Cancelled—The payment has been voided and can no longer be allocated. Draft—The payment can be edited before posting and allocating it to a target. Processed—The payment has been finalized and can be allocated against a target. Failed—The authorization for the payment failed. The default value is Draft. blng Transaction c Type reference **Properties** Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update Description The financial activities or operations that are recorded as part of a payment. This field is a relationship field. **Relationship Name** blng__Transaction__r **Relationship Type** Lookup **Refers To** blng__PaymentTransaction__c blng UnallocatedfromDebitNoteLines c Type currency **Properties** Filter, Nillable, Sort Description The amount from debit note lines that has not been allocated to any specific payment.

Field	Details
	This field is a calculated field.
blng_UnallocatedfromInvoiceLines_	_ [⊂] Type
	currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The amount from invoice lines that has not been allocated to any specific payment.
	This field is a calculated field.
blng_UnallocatedfromInvoices_	$^{ extstyle C}$ Type
	currency
	Properties
	Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The amount from invoice that has not been allocated to any specific payment.
	This field is a calculated field.
blngUnallocationsc	Туре
	currency
	Properties
	Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The total unallocated amounts in a payment.
	This field is a calculated field.

blng__PaymentAllocationDebitNoteLine__c

Represents an individual line item on a debit note allocated to a payment, used to track and manage payment allocations against debit notes for maintaining accurate financial records.



Important: Where possible, we changed noninclusive terms to align with our company value of Equality. We maintained certain terms to avoid any effect on customer implementations.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(),
retrieve(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Field	Details
CurrencyIsoCode	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the payment allocation debit note line when multiple currencies are enabled.
Name	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Autonumber, Defaulted on create, Filter, idLookup, Sort
	Description
	Required. The name of the payment allocation debit note line.
blngAmountc	Туре
	currency
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Sort, Update
	Description Required. The value allocated to a specific debit note line from a payment. This value represents the portion of the payment that's applied to adjust the balance indicated by the debit note line.
blng_BillingFinanceBook_	[©] Type
·	reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The financial ledger that tracks all transactions related to billing, including the allocation of payments to debit note lines. This value ensures that all financial activities are accurately recorded and reported. This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name
	blngBillingFinanceBookr
	Refers To blngFinanceBookc
blng_BillingFinancePeriod_	^C Type
	reference

Field Details

Properties

Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Description

The specific time frame during which the allocation of payments to debit note lines is recorded. This period helps in organizing financial data for reporting and analysis, such as monthly or quarterly financial statements. This field is a relationship field.

Relationship Name

blng__BillingFinancePeriod__r

Refers To

blng__FinancePeriod__c

blng_DebitNoteAllocationId_c

Type

string

Properties

Create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update

Description

A unique identifier for the allocation of a payment to a specific debit note line. This ID helps in tracking and managing the relationship between the payment and the debit note line it's applied to.

blng__DebitNoteLine__c

Type

reference

Properties

Create, Filter, Group, Sort

Description

Required. An individual entry on a debit note that specifies the amount and details of an adjustment. In the context of payment allocation, this entry represents the specific line item to which a portion of the payment is applied. This field is a relationship field.

Relationship Name

blng__DebitNoteLine__r

Relationship Type

Master-detail

Refers To

blng__DebitNoteLine__c (the detail object)

blng ImpactAmount c

Type

currency

Properties

Filter, Nillable, Sort

Field	Details
	Description The financial effect of allocating a payment to a debit note line. This value indicates how much the allocation reduces the outstanding balance of the debit note line. This field is a calculated field.
blngInvoiceLinec	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description An invoice line is an individual entry on an invoice detailing specific charges. This field ensures the payments are correctly applied to related debit note lines. This field is a relationship field
	Relationship Name blngInvoiceLiner
	Refers To blngInvoiceLinec
blngLegalEntityc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The entity responsible for issuing the debit note and receiving the payment.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngLegalEntityr
	Refers To blngLegalEntityc
blngNotesc	Type textarea
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description Additional details or comments related to the allocation of a payment to a debit note line.
blngPaymentc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Sort

Field	Details
	Description Required. The funds allocated to adjust the balance specified by the debit note.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blng_Paymentr
	Relationship Type Master-detail
	Refers To blng_Payment_c (the master object)
blngTypec	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The classification of the financial transaction. Valid values are:
	• Allocation
	• Unallocation
blngUnallocatedc	Type boolean
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Required. Funds or amounts from a payment that are yet to be assigned to a specific debit note line. These amounts are pending allocation to ensure accurate financial tracking and reconciliation. The default value is false.

blng__PaymentAllocationInvoice__c

Represents the allocation of payments to specific invoices. This object is used to track and manage how payments are applied to outstanding invoices, ensuring accurate financial records and reporting.



Important: Where possible, we changed noninclusive terms to align with our company value of Equality. We maintained certain terms to avoid any effect on customer implementations.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(),
retrieve(), search(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Field	Details
CurrencyIsoCode	Туре
	picklist
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description
	The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the payment allocation invoice when multiple currencies are enabled.
Name	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Autonumber, Defaulted on create, Filter, idLookup, Sort
	Description
	Required. The name of the payment allocation invoice. A name is a unique value that helps in identifying the specific allocation record.
blngAmountc	Туре
	currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Sort, Update
	Description Required. The total amount allocated to the invoice. The amount represents the value that has been applied to the invoice from the payment.
blng_BillingFinanceBook_c	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The financial book associated with the billing. This field helps in categorizing and managing financial records according to different finance books.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name
	blngBillingFinanceBookr
	Refers To
	blngFinanceBookc
blng_BillingFinancePeriod_c	Туре
	reference

Field	Details
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The financial period during which the billing and payment allocation occur. This helps in tracking and reporting financial activities within a specific time frame.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngBillingFinancePeriodr
	Refers To blngFinancePeriodc
blngImpactAmountc	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The amount that impacts the invoice balance. The impact amount could be the portion of the payment that directly affects the outstanding balance of the invoice.
	This field is a calculated field.
blngInvoicec	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Sort
	Description Required. The reference to the specific invoice that's being allocated a payment. This links the payment allocation to the corresponding invoice record. This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name
	blng_lnvoicer
	Relationship Type Master-detail
	Refers To blngInvoicec (the detail object)
blng_Notes_c	Type textarea
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description

Additional details or comments related to the payment allocation invoice.

Field	Details
blngPaymentc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Sort
	Description Required. The payment that's being allocated to the invoice.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blng_Paymentr
	Relationship Type Master-detail
	Refers To blngPaymentc (the master object)
blngTypec	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The type of payment allocation.
	Valid values are:
	• Allocation
	• Unallocation
blng_Unallocated_c	Type boolean
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Required. The amount of the payment that remains unallocated. The default value is false.

blng__PaymentAllocationInvoiceLine__c

Represents the allocation of a payment to a specific invoice line. This object helps in tracking how payments are distributed across different invoice lines.

(1) Important: Where possible, we changed noninclusive terms to align with our company value of Equality. We maintained certain terms to avoid any effect on customer implementations.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(),
retrieve(), search(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Field	Details
CurrencyIsoCode	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the payment allocation invoice line when multiple currencies are enabled.
Name	Type string
	Properties Autonumber, Defaulted on create, Filter, idLookup, Sort
	Description Required. The name of the payment allocation invoice line. A name is a unique value that helps in identifying the specific allocation record.
blngAmountc	Type currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Sort, Update
	Description Required. The amount of money allocated to the invoice line. This field specifies the portion of the payment applied to a specific invoice line.
blng_BillingFinanceBook_c	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The finance book associated with the billing. This field helps in categorizing and managing financial records according to different finance books.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngBillingFinanceBookr

Field	Details
	Refers To blngFinanceBookc
blng_BillingFinancePeriod_c	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The financial period during which the billing occurs. This field is used for financial reporting and tracking purposes.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngBillingFinancePeriodr
	Refers To blngFinancePeriodc
blngImpactAmountc	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The amount that impacts the financial records due to the payment allocation. This field is used to understand the financial effect of the payment allocation.
	This field is a calculated field.
blngInvoiceLinec	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Sort
	Description Required. The specific invoice line to which the payment is allocated. This field links the payment allocation to the corresponding invoice line item.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngInvoiceLiner
	Relationship Type Master-detail
	Refers To blngInvoiceLinec (the master object)

Field	Details
blng_LegalEntity_c	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The legal entity associated with the payment allocation. This field helps in identifying the legal entity responsible for the transaction.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngLegalEntityr
	Refers To blngLegalEntityc
blngNotesc	Type textarea
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description Additional notes or comments related to the payment allocation.
blngPaymentc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Sort
	Description Required. The payment record associated with the allocation.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngPaymentr
	Relationship Type Master-detail
	Refers To blngPaymentc (the detail object)
blngTypec	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The type of payment allocation.
	Valid values are:

Field	Details
	• Allocation
	• Unallocation
blngUnallocatedc	Type boolean
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Required. The amount of the payment that remains unallocated. This field indicates how much of the payment is still available to be applied to other invoice lines. The default value is false.

blng__PaymentAuthorization__c

Represents the process of securing authorization from a customer's bank or credit card issuer to charge a specific amount to their account, verifying the availability of sufficient funds or credit.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(),
retrieve(), search(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Field	Details
CurrencyIsoCode	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the payment authorization when multiple currencies are enabled.
LastActivityDate	Type date
	Properties Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort
	Description The timestamp of when a user had last associated a task or event action with the payment authorization.

Field	Details
LastReferencedDate	Type dateTime
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The timestamp when the current user last accessed a payment authorization record indirectly, for example, through a list view or related record.
LastViewedDate	Type dateTime
	Properties
	Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The timestamp when the current user last viewed a payment authorization record. If this value is null, it's possible that the user only accessed the payment authorization record or a related list view (LastReferencedDate), but not viewed the payment authorization record itself.
Name	Type
	string Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The name of the payment authorization. A name is a unique value that helps in identifying the specific allocation record.
OwnerId	Type reference
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Required. The unique identifier indicates the user or system responsible for managing or overseeing a specific payment authorization record.
	This field is a polymorphic relationship field.
	Relationship Name Owner
	Refers To Group, User
blngAccountc	Туре
	reference

Field	Details
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The account of the customer who made the payment.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngAccountr
	Refers To Account
blngBalancec	Type currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The total amount of the payment authorization.
blngCurrentAmountc	Type currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The amount authorized to be debited or captured.
blngEffectiveEndDatec	Type date
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The date when the payment authorization expires.
blng_EffectiveStartDatec	Type date
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The date when the payment authorization takes effect.
blng_CatewayReferenceDetails_c	Туре

Field	Details
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description Additional details about the payment authorization that can't be stored in other fields on the payment record.
blng_GatewayReferenceNumber_c	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The payment authorization transaction ID created by the payment gateway.
blngNetPaymentsc	Type currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The net amount of payments processed, excluding any fees or adjustments. This field is used to track the actual amount received from a transaction after all deductions.
blngNotesc	Type textarea
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description Additional details or comments related to the payment allocation invoice.
blngOriginalAmountc	Type currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The total amount authorized for the transaction.
blngPaymentGatewayc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The payment gateway that processed the payment authorization.

Field	Details
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name
	blngPaymentGatewayr
	Refers To blngPaymentGatewayc
blngPaymentMethodc	Type reference
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The payment method used by the customer to make the payment.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngPaymentMethodr
	Refers To
	blngPaymentMethodc
blngSourcec	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The origin or source of the payment authorization. Valid values are:
	• Gateway
	• Manual
	The default value is Manual.
blngStatusc	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description
	The status of the payment transaction. Valid values are:
	• Active
	• Canceled
	• Processed
	The default value is Active.

blng__PaymentGateway__c

Represents the connection to an external payment gateway.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(),
retrieve(), search(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Field	Details
CurrencyIsoCode	Type picklist
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description
	The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the payment gateway record when multiple currencies are enabled.
LastReferencedDate	Type dateTime
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The timestamp when the current user last accessed a payment gateway record indirectly, for example, through a list view or related record.
LastViewedDate	Type
	dateTime
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The timestamp when the current user last viewed a payment gateway record. If this value is null, it's possible that the user only accessed the payment gateway record or a related list view (LastReferencedDate), but not viewed the payment gateway record itself.
Name	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The name of the payment gateway.

Field	Details
OwnerId	Туре
	reference
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Required. The ID of the record owner.
	This field is a polymorphic relationship field.
	Relationship Name Owner
	Refers To Group, User
adnblngAPILoginIdc	Type encryptedstring
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description A unique identifier to authenticate API requests. This field is used with a transaction key to ensure secure communication between the application and payment gateway.
adnblng_APITransactionKey_c	Type encryptedstring
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description The transaction key required for API authentication with the payment gateway.
adnblngTestModec	Type boolean
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Required. Indicates whether the authorize.net merchant is operating in test mode (true) or not (false). The test mode is used to simulate transactions without processing actual payments.
	The default value is false.
blngActivec	Type boolean
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description Required. Indicates whether the payment gateway is active (true) or not (false). To deactivate the payment gateway, clear the Active checkbox. This won't affect past or existing transactions. The default value is true.
blngDefaultc	Type boolean
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Required. Indicates whether a particular payment gateway is set as the default gateway for processing payments (true) or not (false).
	The default value is false.
blngGatewayTypec	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The name of the payment gateway provider.
	Valid values are:
	• AuthorizeDotNet
	• CyberSource
	• PayFlowPro
	• Payeezy
blngNotesc	Type textarea
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description Additional information or comments related to the payment gateway.
csblngMerchantIdc	Type encryptedstring
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description The ID of the merchant account used by the payment gateway. This merchant account links to a merchant account at the payment processor.

Field	Details
csblng_MerchantReference_c	Туре
	encryptedstring
	Properties
	Create, Nillable, Update
	Description
	The merchant reference identifier for transactions processed through a payment gateway.
csblngTestModec	Туре
	boolean
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description
	Required. Indicates whether the CyberSource merchant is operating in test mode ($true$) or not (false). The test mode is used to simulate transactions without processing actual
	payments.
	The default value is false.
csblng_TransactionSecurityKey_c	Туре
	textarea
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description
	The security key used for authenticating transactions with the payment gateway.
pyzblngAPIKeyc	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The API key used to authenticate and authorize transactions with the payment gateway service.
pyzblngAPILoginIdc	Type encryptedstring
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description
	A unique identifier to authenticate the payeezy API requests. This field is used with a transaction key to ensure secure communication between the application and the payment gateway.

Field	Details
pyzblngAPISecretc	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The API secret used along with the API key to authenticate and authorize transactions with the payment gateway service.
pyzblng_APITransactionKey_c	Туре
	encryptedstring
	Properties
	Create, Nillable, Update
	Description
	Stores the payeezy transaction key required for API authentication with the payment gateway.
pyzolng FrableWerIdentification_c	Туре
	boolean
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description
	Required. Indicates whether the user identification during payment processing is enabled $(true)$ or not $(false)$.
	The default value is false.
pyzblngJSSecurityKeyc	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	A JavaScript security key used to enhance the security of client interactions with the payment gateway.
pyzblngTestModec	Туре
	boolean
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description
	Required. Indicates whether the Payeezy merchant is operating in test mode (true) or not (false). Test mode is used to simulate transactions without processing actual payments.
	The default value is false.
	THE UCIAUIT VALUE IS LAISE.

Field	Details
pyzblngTokenc	Type string
	-
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	Required. A token used for secure Payeezy transactions.
pyzblngTransarmorToker	¹ C Type
	string
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

blng__PaymentGatewayConfig__c

Represents the configuration for integrating Salesforce Billing with a payment gateway.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(),
retrieve(), search(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Field	Details
CurrencyIsoCode	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the invoice when multiple currencies are enabled.
Name	Type string
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description
	Required. The name of the payment gateway configuration.
SetupOwnerId	Туре
	reference
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The ID of the owner of the payment gateway configuration.
	This field is a polymorphic relationship field.
	Relationship Name
	SetupOwner
	Refers To
	Organization, Profile, User
blngClassNamec	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The Apex class name that handles the integration with a specific payment gateway.

blng__PaymentMapping__c

Represents the process of associating payment types, methods, or purposes with other information.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(),
retrieve(), search(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Field	Details
CurrencyIsoCode	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the payment mapping record when multiple currencies are enabled.
LastActivityDate	Type date
	Properties Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort
	Description The timestamp of when a user had last associated a task or event action with the payment mapping record.
LastReferencedDate	Type dateTime
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The timestamp when the current user last accessed a payment mapping record indirectly, for example, through a list view or related record.
LastViewedDate	Type dateTime
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The timestamp when the current user last viewed a payment mapping record. If this value is null, it's possible that the user only accessed the payment mapping record or a related list view (LastReferencedDate), but not viewed the payment mapping itself.
Name	Type string
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The name of the payment mapping record.
OwnerId	Type reference
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Required. The ID of the record owner.

Field	Details
	This field is a polymorphic relationship field.
	Relationship Name Owner
	Refers To Group, User
blngAmountc	Type currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The amount to be debited or captured.
blngInvoiceLinec	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The invoice line associated with the payment mapping record.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngInvoiceLiner
	Refers To blngInvoiceLinec
blngInvoicec	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The invoice associated with the payment mapping record.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngInvoicer
	Refers To blngInvoicec
blngNotesc	Type textarea
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update

Field	Details
	Description Additional information or comments related to the payment mapping record.
blngOrderProductc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The order product associated with the payment mapping record.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blng_OrderProductr
	Refers To OrderItem
blngOrderc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The order associated with the payment mapping record.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngOrderr
	Refers To Order
blng_PaymentAuthorization_c	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The authorization record for this payment mapping. If there's a delayed capture (when the capture occurs after the authorization), all captures must be made against a previously successful authorization transaction.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngPaymentAuthorizationr
	Refers To blngPaymentAuthorizationc

Field	Details
blng_QuoteLine_c	Туре
	reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The quote line associated with the payment mapping record.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blng_QuoteLiner
	Refers To SBQQQuoteLinec
blng_Quote_c	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The quote associated with the payment mapping record.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blng_Quoter
	Refers To SBQQQuotec
blngStatusc	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The status of the payment mapping.
	Valid values are:
	• Active
	• Canceled
	The default value is Active.

blng__PaymentMethod__c

Represents the storage of information about different payment methods used by customers.



(Important: Where possible, we changed noninclusive terms to align with our company value of Equality. We maintained certain terms to avoid any effect on customer implementations.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(), retrieve(), search(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Field	Details
CurrencyIsoCode	Type picklist
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description
	The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the payment authorization when multiple currencies are enabled.
LastReferencedDate	Туре
	dateTime
	Properties
	Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The timestamp when the current user last accessed a payment method record indirectly, for example, through a list view or related record.
LastViewedDate	Туре
	dateTime
	Properties
	Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The timestamp when the current user last viewed a payment method record. If this value is
	null, it's possible that the user only accessed the payment method record or a related list
	view (LastReferencedDate), but not viewed the payment method record itself.
Name	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Autonumber, Defaulted on create, Filter, idLookup, Sort
	Description
	The name of the payment method.

Field	Details
blngAccountc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Sort
	Description Required. The account of the customer who made the payment. This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngAccountr
	Relationship Type Master-detail
	Refers To Account (the master object)
blngActivec	Type boolean
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Required. Indicates whether the payment method is active (true) or not (false). To deactivate the payment method, clear the Active checkbox. This won't affect past or existing transactions or assignments. The default value is true.
blngAutoPayc	Type boolean
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Required. The payment method to create payments toward posted invoices on a customer account.
	The default value is false.
blngBankAccountNamec	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The name of the bank account associated with the payment method.
blng_BankAccountNumber_c	Type encryptedstring

Field	Details
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description The bank account number associated with the payment method.
blngBankAccountTypec	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The type of bank account associated with the payment method.
	Valid values are:
	Business Checking
	• Checking
	• Savings
blngBankNamec	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The name of the bank associated with the payment method.
blngBankRoutingCodec	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The valid routing number of the bank, also known as the American Bankers Association (ABA) code.
blngBillingAddressc	Type textarea
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The billing address associated with the payment method that must match the address on file with the payment provider.
blngBillingCityc	Type string

Field	Details
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The city of the billing address associated with the payment method.
blngBillingCompanyc	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The company name associated with the billing address.
blngBillingCountryc	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The country of the billing address associated with the payment method.
blngBillingEmailc	Type email
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The email address associated with the billing information.
blngBillingFaxc	Type phone
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The fax details associated with the billing information.
blngBillingFirstNamec	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The first name provided in the billing information.
blngBillingLastNamec	Type string

Field	Details
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The last name provided in the billing information.
blngBillingPhonec	Type phone
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The phone number provided in the billing information.
blng_BillingStateProvince_c	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The state of the billing address associated with the payment method.
blngBillingStreetc	Type textarea
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The street of the billing address associated with the payment method.
blngBillingZipPostalc	Туре
	string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The zip code of the billing address associated with the payment method.
blngCVVc	Type encryptedstring
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description The Card Verification Value (CVV) code linked to the credit or debit card in the billing information.

Field	Details
blngCardBINc	Туре
	string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The six digit Bank Identification Number (BIN) associated with a credit or debit card in the billing information.
blng_CardExpirationMonth_c	Type picklist
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The expiration month of a credit or debit card in the billing information. This information is sent from the payment gateway following a transaction request.
blngCardExpirationYearc	Type picklist
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The expiration year of a credit or debit card in the billing information. This information is sent from the payment gateway following a transaction request.
blngCardLastFourc	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The last four digits of a credit or debit card number in the billing information.
blngCardNumberc	Type encryptedstring
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description The credit or debit card number in the billing information.
blngCardTypec	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description
	The credit or debit card type in the billing information.
	Valid values are:
	American Express
	• Discover
	• Mastercard
	• Visa
blngGLRulec	Туре
	reference
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The General Ledger (GL) rule associated with the payment method.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name
	blng_GLRuler
	Refers To blngGLRulec
blngGLTreatmentc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The GL treatment associated with the payment method.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngGLTreatmentr
	Refers To
	blngGLTreatmentc
blngGatewayResponse	C Type textarea
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The response received from the payment gateway after processing a transaction.

Field	Details
blngLegalEntityc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The legal entity associated with a payment method. This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngLegalEntityr
	Refers To blngLegalEntityc
blngNameoncardc	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The name on the payment card.
blngNickNamec	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The nick name on the payment card.
blngNotesc	Type textarea
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description Additional information or comments related to the payment method.
blng_PaymentGatewayToken_c	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description A token for secured payment gateway transactions.
blngPaymentGatewayc	Type reference

Field	Details
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The Salesforce Billing payment gateway record used to establish communication with the external payment gateway.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngPaymentGatewayr
	Refers To blngPaymentGatewayc
blngPaymentTypec	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The type of the payment method.
	Valid values are:
	• ACH
	• Credit Card
blngStreetAddress2c	Туре
	string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The street associated with the customer's identification address for the payment.
pyzblngChequeNumberc	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The cheque number associated with a payment. This field is used for Payeezy gateway.
pyzblng_EncryptedCustamerId_c	Type encryptedstring
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description This field stores the encrypted customer data and is used for Payeezy gateway.

Field	Details
pyzblng_IdentificationAddress_c	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The address and to identify the authors are address to a surrount.
	The address used to identify the customer making the payment.
pyzblng_IdentificationCity_c	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The city associated with the customer's identification address for the payment.
pyzblng_IdentificationCountry_c	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The country of the identification address of the customer making the payment.
pyzblng_IdentificationIdNumber_c	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The identification number to verify the customer making the payment.
pyzblng_IdentificationPromeNumber_c	Tuna
	string
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The identification phone number of the customer making the payment.
pyzblng_IdentificationPhoneType_c	Tuno
4	Type picklist
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description
	The type of the identification phone number.

Field	Details
	Valid values are:
	• Day
	• Home
	• Night
	• Work
pyzblng_IdentificationState_c	Туре
	picklist
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description
	The state of the identification address of the customer making the payment.
pyzblng_IdentificationType_c	Туре
	picklist
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The process for verifying a customer's identity.
	Valid values are:
	• Driver license
	• Military ID
	Social Security Number
	• Tax ID
pyzblng_IdentificationZIP_c	. Type
-	string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The ZIP code associated with the customer's identification address for the payment.

blng__PaymentRun__c

Represents a batch processing job in Salesforce Billing. During a payment run, all payment schedules that meet the specified criteria are processed, resulting in the collection of payments.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(),
retrieve(), search(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Field	Details
CurrencyIsoCode	Type picklist
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description
	The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the payment authorization when multiple currencies are enabled.
LastActivityDate	Туре
	date
	Properties
	Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The timestamp of when a user had last associated a task or event action with the account.
Name	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The name of the payment run.
OwnerId	Туре
	reference
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Required. The ID of the record owner.
	This field is a polymorphic relationship field.
	Relationship Name
	Owner
	Relationship Type
	Lookup

Field	Details
	Refers To Group, User
blng_ApexJobIdForCleanUp_c	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description A unique identifier of an Apex job that's responsible for the cleanup tasks.
blngApexJobIdc	Туре
	string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description A unique identifier of an Apex job associated with the payment run.
blngCleanUpStatusc	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The status of the cleanup operations associated with the payment run.
	Valid values are:
	• Completed
	• Started
	• Step 1 : Invoice update
	• Step 2 : Payment Transaction update
blngCompletedTimec	Type dateTime
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The time when the payment run was completed.
blng_FailedTransactions_c	Туре
	double
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description The details of transactions that failed during the payment run process.
blng_InvoicesProcessed_c	Type double
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The invoices that were successfully processed during the payment run.
blngPaymentGatewayc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The payment gateway used to process the transactions during the payment run.
	This field is a relationship field. Relationship Name
	blngPaymentGatewayr Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngPaymentGatewayc
blngPaymentSchedulerc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The payment scheduler responsible for the payment run.
	This field is a relationship field. Relationship Name blngPaymentSchedulerr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngPaymentSchedulerc
blngStartTimec	Type dateTime

Field	Details
	Properties State Miller Control of the Properties
	Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The start time of the payment run.
blngStatusc	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The status of the payment run.
	Valid values are:
	• Completed
	• Failed
	• Processing
	• Started
blng_SuccessfulTransactions_c	Type double
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The number of transactions that were successfully processed during the payment run.
blngTargetDatec	Type date
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The date by which the payment run is intended to be completed.
blng_TotalPaymentProcessed_c	Type currency
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The total number of payments that were successfully processed during the payment run.
blng_TransactionsGenerated_c	Type double

Field	Details
	Properties
	Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The number of transactions that were generated during the payment run.
	This field is a calculated field.

blng__PaymentScheduler__c

Represents automating payment runs by creating payment schedulers, which process the payment runs on a recurring basis.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(),
retrieve(), search(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Field	Details
CurrencyIsoCode	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the payment scheduler when multiple currencies are enabled.
LastActivityDate	Type date
	Properties Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort
	Description The timestamp of when a user had last associated a task or event action with the account.
LastReferencedDate	Type dateTime
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort

Field	Details
	Description The timestamp when the current user last accessed a payment scheduler record indirectly, for example, through a list view or related record.
LastViewedDate	Type dateTime
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The timestamp when the current user last viewed a payment scheduler record. If this value is null, it's possible that the user only accessed the payment scheduler record or a related list view (LastReferencedDate), but not viewed the payment scheduler record itself.
Name	Type string
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	Description The name of the payment scheduler.
OwnerId	Type reference
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Required. The ID of the record owner.
	This field is a polymorphic relationship field.
	Relationship Name Owner
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To Group, User
blngApexJobIdc	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description A unique identifier of an Apex job associated with the payment scheduler.

Field	Details
blng_IncludeAllCurrencies_c	Type boolean
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Required. Indicates whether to include all currencies in the payment run (true) or not (false).
	The default value is false.
blngNotesc	Type textarea
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description Additional details or comments related to the payment scheduler.
blngPaymentBatchesc	Type multipicklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Update
	Description A collection of several payments combined for processing.
blngPaymentGatewayc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The Salesforce Billing payment gateway record used to establish communication with the external payment gateway.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngPaymentGatewayr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngPaymentGatewayc
blngPaymentTypec	Type multipicklist

Field	Details
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Update
	Description The type of payment in the payment schedule.
	Valid values are:
	• ACH
	• Credit Card
blng_Startdateandtime_c	Type dateTime
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The start date and time of the payment scheduler.
blngTargetDatec	Type date
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Required. The target date for the payment run. Billing schedules having the next billing date before this date is picked up for invoicing.
blngTargetDayOfMonthc	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description In a monthly schedule, the designated day of the month for the payment run.
blngTargetDayofWeekc	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description In a weekly schedule, the designated day of the week for the payment run.
blngTypec	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description
	Required. The type of payment schedule.
	Valid values are:
	• Daily
	• Monthly
	• Once
	• Weekly

blng__PaymentTerms__c

Represents the period customers have to pay for an invoiced order product.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(),
retrieve(), search(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Details
Type picklist
Properties Control of the Control of
Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
Description
The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the payment term when multiple currencies are enabled.
Туре
string
Properties
Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Sort, Update
Description
The name of the payment term.
Туре
reference
Properties
Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description The ID of the record owner. This is a polymorphic relationship field.
	Relationship Name SetupOwner
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To Organization, Profile, User
blngNumberOfDaysc	Type double
	Properties Create, Filter, Sort, Update
	Description The number of days by which the payment term is due.

blng__PaymentTransaction__c

Represents the payment transactions associated with a payment.



(1) Important: Where possible, we changed noninclusive terms to align with our company value of Equality. We maintained certain terms to avoid any effect on customer implementations.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(), retrieve(), search(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Field	Details
CurrencyIsoCode	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the payment transaction record when multiple currencies are enabled.

Field	Details
LastReferencedDate	Туре
	dateTime
	Properties Filter Nillable Cort
	Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The timestamp when the current user last accessed a payment transaction record indirectly, for example, through a list view or related record.
LastViewedDate	Type dateTime
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The timestamp when the current user last viewed a payment transaction record. If this value is null, it's possible that the user only accessed the payment transaction record or a related list view (LastReferencedDate), but not viewed the payment transaction record itself.
Name	Туре
	string
	Properties Autonumber, Defaulted on create, Filter, idLookup, Sort
	Description Required. The name of the payment transaction.
OwnerId	Type reference
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Required. The ID of the record owner.
	This field is a polymorphic relationship field.
	Relationship Name Owner
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To Group, User
blngAVSResponseCode_	_ ^C Type
	string

Field	Details
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The numeric value contained in a gateway response alongside the response status, response, and response message. The code is used as an indexing value for different types of responses. You can generally ignore it and focus on the response and response message to get the details you need about the results of your transaction request.
blngAVSZipc	Type string
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The numeric address and zip code used as an indexing value.
blng_Account_c	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The account containing the invoice that the payment transaction is set to pay.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngAccountr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To Account
blngAmountc	Type double
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The amount that Salesforce Billing attempts to use against the balance of an invoice.
blngAuthorizationc	Туре
	string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description The approval from a customer's bank or credit card issuer to charge a payment to their account.
blng_BankAccountName_c	Type
	string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	A user-defined value for the bank account name. This field used to record information about externally recorded Automated Clearing House (ACH) payments.
blng_BankAccountNumber_c	Туре
	encryptedstring
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description A user-defined value for the bank account number. This field used to record information about externally recorded ACH payments.
blng_BankAccountTypec	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description A user-defined value for the bank account type. This field used to record information about externally recorded ACH payments. Valid values are:
	Business Checking
	• Checking
	• Savings
blng_BankName_c	Type string
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	A user-defined value for the bank name. This field used to record information about externally recorded ACH payments.
blngBankRoutingCodec	Туре
	string

Field	Details
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description A user-defined value for the bank routing code. This field used to record information about externally recorded ACH payments.
blngCardCodeResponsec	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The response code from the card issuer. This code indicates the result of the authorization request for a credit card transaction.
blng_CardExpirationMonth_c	Туре
	picklist
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description
	The expiration month of a credit or debit card in the billing information. This information is sent from the payment gateway following a transaction request.
blng_CardExpirationYear_c	Туре
	picklist
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description
	The expiration year of a credit or debit card in the billing information. This information is sent from the payment gateway following a transaction request.
blngCardTypec	Туре
	picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The credit or debit card type in the billing information.
	Valid values are:
	American Express
	• Discover
	• Mastercard
	• Visa
	. 100

Field	Details
blng_ExceptionMessagec	Type textarea
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description The message displayed when a transaction is created without any associated payment against the invoice.
blngGatewayDatec	Type dateTime
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The date that the transaction request occurred in the payment gateway.
blngGatewayIDc	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description A unique identification number associated with the transaction request that occurred in the payment gateway.
blngGatewayRequestc	Type textarea
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description The payment request to a payment gateway.
blngGatewayResponsec	Type textarea
	Properties
	Create, Nillable, Update Description The response from the payment gateway.
blngGatewayStatusc	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update

Field

Details

Description

The values that summarizes the payment gateway's response to the payment transaction request. Valid values are:

- Decline
- Indeterminate
- PermanentFail
- RequiresReview
- Success
- SystemError
- ValidationError

blrg_IsPaymentProcessedBucessfully_c Type

boolean

Properties

Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update

Description

Required. Indicates whether Salesforce Billing created a payment for a successful transaction (true) or not (false). If this field is deselected on a successful transaction, review why Salesforce Billing didn't create the payment, For example, the user who owns the payment run didn't have the permission to access payment records. After you resolve the issue, create a payment for the same amount as the payment transaction, and then allocate it to the transaction's invoice on your own.

The default value is false.

blng Notes c

Type

textarea

Properties

Create, Nillable, Update

Description

Additional information or comments related to the payment transaction.

blng PaymentGateway c

Properties

reference

Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Description

The Salesforce Billing payment gateway record used to establish communication with the external payment gateway. This field is inherited from the payment method.

This field is a relationship field.

Relationship Name

blng__PaymentGateway___r

Field	Details
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blng_PaymentGateway_c
blngPaymentMethodc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The payment method used to provide customer payment information to the payment gateway.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngPaymentMethodr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngPaymentMethodc
blngPaymentRunc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The payment run that created the payment transaction to record the result of external payment gateway communication.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngPaymentRunr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To blngPaymentRunc
blngReasonCodec	Type double
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The reason for a particular payment transaction.

Field	Details
blng_RequestCreditCardNumber_c	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The credit card number associated with a payment transaction.
blngRequestInvoicec	Туре
	reference
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The invoice that Salesforce Billing is attempting to pay through the payment transaction. If
	the transaction is successful, Salesforce Billing creates a payment record and attempts to allocate it to the invoice.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name
	blngRequestInvoicer
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To
	blngInvoicec
blng_RequestTransactionType_c	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The type of payment action requested of the customer bank: authorization, charge, void, or
	refund.
blng_RequestTypeOfPayment_c	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The type of payment being requested.
blngResponseCodec	Туре
	string

Field

Details

Properties

Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Description

The numeric value contained in a gateway response alongside the response status, response, and response message. The code is used as an indexing value for different types of responses. You can generally ignore it and focus on the response and response message to get the details you need about the results of your transaction request.

blng ResponseMessage_c

Type

string

Properties

Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Description

The message sent from the external payment gateway to show the result of the transaction request. You can review this message for additional context regarding the value of the transaction's gateway status.

blng ResponseStatus c

Type

string

Properties

Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Description

The message sent from the external payment gateway to show the result of the transaction request. While this value can vary between gateways, it's often the same as the response message.

blng__Response__c

Type

string

Properties

Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Description

A detailed message contained in a gateway response alongside the response code, response, response status, and response message. Although specific responses vary between gateways, the response usually provides more information about the response message.

blng_SourceTransactionId_c

Type

string

Properties

Create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update

Description

A unique identifier of the source transaction that's associated with the payment.

Field	Details
blng_Status_c	Туре
	picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The status of the payment transaction. The transaction's status is
	In Progress
	while the external payment gateway communicates with the customer bank. Salesforce Billing changes it to Completed after the gateway returns a transaction response. Valid values are:
	• Completed
	• In Progress
	• Processed
blngTransactionc	Type reference
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description All customer transactions in a payment transaction.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngTransactionr
	Relationship Type Lookup
	Refers To
	blngPaymentTransactionc
blngTypec	Type picklist
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The type of action requested from the customer bank. Valid values are:
	• Authorization
	• Capture
	• Charge
	• Refund
	• Void

blng__Refund__c

Represents a refund made against a payment.



(Important: Where possible, we changed noninclusive terms to align with our company value of Equality. We maintained certain terms to avoid any effect on customer implementations.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(), retrieve(), search(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Details
Туре
picklist
Properties
Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
Description
The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the invoice when multiple currencies are enabled.
Туре
date
Properties
Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort
Description
The timestamp of when a user had last associated a task or event action with the refund.
Туре
dateTime
Properties
Filter, Nillable, Sort
Description
The timestamp when the current user last accessed a refund record indirectly, for example, through a list view or related record.
Tuno
Type dateTime
Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort

Field	Details
	Description The timestamp when the current user last viewed a refund record. If this value is null, it's possible that the user only accessed the refund record or a related list view (LastReferencedDate), but not viewed the refund record itself.
Name	Type string Properties Autonumber, Defaulted on create, Filter, idLookup, Sort
	Description Required. The name of the refund.
blngAccountc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Sort
	Description Required. The customer account containing the payment that this refund targets.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngAccountr
	Relationship Type Master-detail
	Refers To Account (the master object)
blngAmountc	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The total amount of this refund.
	This field is a calculated field.
blng_BaseCurrencyAmount_c	Type currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The amount of the refund in the base currency of the organization. It's used to standardize the amount across different currencies.

Field Details blng BaseCurrencyFXDate c Type date **Properties** Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update Description The date on which the Foreign Exchange (FX) rate is applied to convert an amount into the base currency. blng BaseCurrencyFXRate c Type double **Properties** Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update Description The foreign exchange rate used to convert an amount from a foreign currency to the base currency. blng__BaseCurrency__c Type string **Properties** Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update Description The primary currency in which the financial transactions are recorded and reported. blng BillingFinanceBook c Type reference **Properties** Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update Description The financial ledger that tracks all transactions related to billing, including the allocation of payments to debit note lines. This value ensures that all financial activities are accurately recorded and reported. This field is a relationship field. **Relationship Name** blng__BillingFinanceBook__r **Refers To** blng__FinanceBook__c blng CheckNumber c Type string **Properties** Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description The check number issued in an external system for a refund.
blngGLRulec	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The accounting treatment for financial transactions, including which general ledger accounts to debit and credit.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngGLRuler
	Refers To blngGLRulec
blngGLTreatmentc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The general ledger treatment defines how a financial transaction is recorded in the general ledger, specifying the accounts and the nature of the entries.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngGLTreatmentr
	Refers To blngGLTreatmentc
blngImpactAmountc	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description Specifies how this refund impacts a customer's accounts receivable.
	This field is a calculated field.
blngLegalEntityc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description The legal entity used to associate the refund with other transactional records in Salesforce Billing.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngLegalEntityr
	Refers To blngLegalEntityc
blngNotesc	Type textarea
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description Additional details or comments related to the refund.
blng_PaymentGatewayTransactionID_c	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The transaction ID used to identify the refund in the payment gateway.
blngRefundDatec	Type date
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The date on which a refund is processed or issued to a customer.
blng_RefundDescription_c	Type textarea
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description A description or additional details about a refund.
blng_RefundLineCreationStatus_c	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description The status of the refund line creation. A Fail status means that the refund line couldn't be created. The system configuration provides more details about the status.
blngRefundModec	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description Required. The mode of refund. External mode refers to a refund made through an external system, while electronic mode represents a refund processed within Salesforce.
	Valid values are:
	• Electronic
	• External
	The default value is External.
blng_RefundPaymentMethod_	_ ^C Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The payment method represents a credit card or banking details that can be used to process a payment.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngRefundPaymentMethodr
	Refers To blngPaymentMethodc
blngRefundTypec	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The type of refund being processed.
	Valid values are:
	• ACH
	Bank Transfer
	• Cash
	• Check

Field	Details
	• Credit Card
blng_PefundedfromCreditNoteLi	nes_C Type
	currency
	Properties
	Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The amount refunded from credit note lines.
	This field is a calculated field.
blngRefundedfromPaymen	^{ts} _C Type
	currency
	Properties
	Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The amount refunded from payments.
	This field is a calculated field.
blngStatusc	Туре
	picklist
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description
	The state of this refund.
	Valid values are:
	• Cancelled
	• Draft
	• Posted
	The default value is Draft.

blng__RefundLineCreditNoteLine__c

Represents a relationship between a refund line and a credit note line.

(1) Important: Where possible, we changed noninclusive terms to align with our company value of Equality. We maintained certain terms to avoid any effect on customer implementations.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(),
retrieve(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Field	Details
CurrencyIsoCode	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the refund line credit note line when multiple currencies are enabled.
Name	Type string
	Properties Autonumber, Defaulted on create, Filter, idLookup, Sort
	Description Required. The name of the refund line credit note line.
blngAmountc	Type currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The total amount applied to or unapplied from a refund line credit note line.
blng_BaseCurrencyAmount_c	Type currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The amount of the refund line credit note line in the base currency of the organization. This value is used to standardize the amount across different currencies.
blng_BaseCurrencyFXDate_c	Type date
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description The date on which the foreign exchange rate is applied to convert an amount into the base currency.
blng_BaseCurrencyFXRate_c	Type double
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The foreign exchange rate used to convert an amount from a foreign currency to the base currency.
blngBaseCurrencyc	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The primary currency in which the financial transactions are recorded and reported.
blng_BillingFinanceBook_c	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description A set of financial records for reporting and accounting purposes.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngBillingFinanceBookr
	Refers To blngFinanceBookc
blng_BillingFinancePeriod_c	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description A specific time frame for financial reporting and accounting purposes.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngBillingFinancePeriodr

Field	Details
	Refers To blngFinancePeriodc
blngCreditNoteLinec	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Sort
	Description Required. The credit note line item associated with the refund.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngCreditNoteLiner
	Relationship Type Master-detail
	Refers To blngCreditNoteLinec (the master object)
blngGLRulec	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The accounting treatment for financial transactions, including which general ledger accounts to debit and credit.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngGLRuler
	Refers To blngGLRulec
blngGLTreatmentc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The general ledger treatment defines how a financial transaction is recorded in the general ledger, specifying the accounts and the nature of the entries.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngGLTreatmentr

Field	Details
	Refers To blngGLTreatmentc
blngImpactAmountc	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description Specifies how this refund line credit note line impacts a customer's accounts receivable. This field is a calculated field.
blngLegalEntityc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The legal entity used to associate the refund line credit note line with other transactional records in Salesforce Billing.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngLegalEntityr
	Refers To blngLegalEntityc
blngNotesc	Type textarea
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description Additional details or comments related to the refund line credit note line.
blngRefundc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Sort
	Description Required. The parent refund of the refund line.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngRefundr

Field	Details
	Relationship Type Master-detail
	Refers To
	blngRefundc (the detail object)
blngStatusc	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The state of the refund line credit note line.
	Valid values are:
	• Cancelled
	• Draft
	• Posted
	The default value is Draft.
blngTypec	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The type of refund line.
	Valid values are:
	• Allocation
	• Unallocation
blngUnallocatedc	Туре
	boolean
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description
	Required. The amount of the refund that remains unallocated. This field indicates how much of the refund is still available to be applied to other credit note lines. The default value is false.

blng__RefundLinePayment__c

Represents a portion of a refund that's applied to or unapplied from a payment. One refund line can represent the full amount of a refund.



Important: Where possible, we changed noninclusive terms to align with our company value of Equality. We maintained certain terms to avoid any effect on customer implementations.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(),
retrieve(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Field	Details
CurrencyIsoCode	Type picklist
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description
	The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the refund line payment when multiple currencies are enabled.
LastActivityDate	Type date
	Properties Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The timestamp of when a user had last associated a task or event action with the account.
Name	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Autonumber, Defaulted on create, Filter, idLookup, Sort
	Description Required. The name of the refund line payment.
blngAmountc	Туре
	currency
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description Required. The total amount applied to or unapplied from a payment by the refund line.
blng_BaseCurrencyAmount_c	Type currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The amount of the refund line payment in the base currency of the organization. This value is used to standardize the amount across different currencies.
blng_BaseCurrencyFXDate_c	Type date
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The date on which the foreign exchange rate is applied to convert the amount into the base currency.
blng_BaseCurrencyFXRate_c	Type double
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The foreign exchange rate used to convert an amount from a foreign currency to the base currency.
blngBaseCurrencyc	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The primary currency in which the financial transactions are recorded and reported.
blng_BillingFinanceBookc	Туре
	reference Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description A set of financial records for reporting and accounting purposes.
	This field is a relationship field.

Field	Details
	Relationship Name blngBillingFinanceBookr
	Refers To blngFinanceBookc
blng_BillingFinancePeriod_c	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description A specific time frame for financial reporting and accounting purposes.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngBillingFinancePeriodr
	Refers To blngFinancePeriodc
blngGLRulec	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The accounting treatment for financial transactions, including which general ledger accounts to debit and credit.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngGLRuler
	Refers To blngGLRulec
blngGLTreatmentc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The general ledger treatment defines how a financial transaction is recorded in the general ledger, specifying the accounts and the nature of the entries.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngGLTreatmentr

Field	Details
	Refers To blngGLTreatmentc
blngImpactAmountc	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description Specifies how the payment refund line impacts a customer's accounts receivable.
	This field is a calculated field.
blngLegalEntityc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The legal entity used to associate the revenue line payment with other transactional records in Salesforce Billing.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngLegalEntityr
	Refers To blngLegalEntityc
blngNotesc	Type textarea
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description Additional details or comments related to the refund line payment.
blngPaymentModec	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The method of payment used for a refund line payment.
	Valid values are:
	• Electronic
	• External

Field	Details
blngPaymentc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Sort
	Description Required. The payment record that the refund line targets. Refund applications and unapplications are made against the payment record.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngPaymentr
	Relationship Type Master-detail
	Refers To blngPaymentc (the detail object)
blngRefundLineDatec	Type date
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Required. The date associated with a refund line payment.
blngRefundc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Sort
	Description Required. The parent refund of the refund line payment. This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngRefundr
	Relationship Type Master-detail
	Refers To blngRefundc (the master object)
blngStatusc	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The state of the refund line payment. Valid values are:

Field	Details
	• Cancelled
	• Draft
	• Posted
	The default value is Draft.
blngTypec	Type picklist
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The type of refund line.
	Valid values are:
	• Allocation
	• Unallocation
blngUnallocatedc	Туре
	boolean
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Required. The amount of the refund that remains unallocated. This field indicates how much of the refund is still available to be applied to other payments. The default value is false.

blng__RevenueAdjustment__c

Represents the adjustment to increase, decrease, or transfer the available balance between revenue schedules when actual revenue differs from the initial revenue schedule.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(),
retrieve(), search(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Field	Details
CurrencyIsoCode	Type picklist

Field	Details
	Properties State Company of the Comp
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the revenue adjustment when multiple currencies are enabled.
LastActivityDate	Type date
	Properties Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort
	Description The timestamp of when a user had last associated a task or event action with the revenue adjustment.
LastReferencedDate	Type dateTime
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The timestamp when the current user last accessed a revenue adjustment record indirectly, for example, through a list view or related record.
LastViewedDate	Туре
	dateTime
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The timestamp when the current user last viewed a revenue adjustment record. If this value is null, it's possible that the user only accessed the revenue adjustment record or a related list view (LastReferencedDate), but not viewed the revenue adjustment record itself.
Name	Type string
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The name of the revenue adjustment.
OwnerId	Type reference
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description
	Required. The ID of the record owner.
	This field is a polymorphic relationship field.
	Relationship Name Owner
	Refers To Group, User
blngAccountc	Type reference
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The parent account that's inherited from the order product.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngAccountr
	Refers To
	Account
blng_AdjustmentAmount_c	Type
	Properties Properties
	Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The total amount contributed to either increase or decrease the available balance on a revenue schedule.
blngAdjustmentGroupc	Туре
	string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description A collection of revenue adjustments.
blngAmountc	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description All revenue for a revenue adjustment that's available to be adjusted or distributed.

Field	Details
	This field is a calculated field.
blngFinanceBookc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The finance book that records transactions related to the revenue adjustment.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blng_FinanceBookr
	Refers To blngFinanceBookc
blngFinancePeriodc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The time period in which the revenue adjustment transactions are complete.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngFinancePeriodr
	Refers To blngFinancePeriodc
blngLegalEntityc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The legal entity used to associate the revenue adjustment with other transactional records in Salesforce Billing.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngLegalEntityr
	Refers To blngLegalEntityc
blngNotesc	Type textarea

Field	Details
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description Additional details or comments related to the revenue adjustment.
blng_RelatedRevenueAdjustment_c	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The total changes created through revenue adjustments based on related revenue adjustments.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngRelatedRevenueAdjustmentr
	Refers To blngRevenueAdjustmentc
blng_RevenueAdjustmentDate_c	Type date
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The date by which the changes to the revenue adjustment line must be incorporated.
blngStatusc	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The status of the revenue adjustment. Valid values are:
	• Draft
	• Posted
	The default value is Draft.
blngTypec	Type picklist
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The types of revenue changes supported by the revenue adjustment. Valid values are:

Field	Details
	• Adjustment
	• Transfer
	The default value is Adjustment.

_RevenueAdjustmentLine__c

Represents a type of revenue schedule balance change. You can have multiple adjustment lines that each target a different revenue schedule.



(1) Important: Where possible, we changed noninclusive terms to align with our company value of Equality. We maintained certain terms to avoid any effect on customer implementations.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(), retrieve(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Field	Details
CurrencyIsoCode	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the revenue adjustment line when multiple currencies are enabled.
LastActivityDate	Type date
	Properties Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort
	Description The timestamp of when a user had last associated a task or event action with the revenue adjustment line.
Name	Type string
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description The name of the revenue adjustment line.
blng_Account_c	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The parent account that's inherited from the order product.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngAccountr
	Refers To Account
blng_AdjustmentAmount_c	Type currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Sort, Update
	Description Required. The total amount added through revenue adjustments to the revenue adjustment line.
blngFinanceBookc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The finance book that records transactions related to the revenue adjustment line.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngFinanceBookr
	Refers To blngFinanceBookc
blngFinancePeriodc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The time period in which the revenue adjustment line transactions are complete.

Field	Details
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name
	blngFinancePeriodr
	Refers To
	blngFinancePeriodc
blngGLRulec	Туре
	reference
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The accounting treatment for financial transactions, including which general ledger accounts to debit and credit.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngGLRuler
	Refers To
	blngGLRulec
blngGLTreatmentc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The general ledger treatment defines how a financial transaction is recorded in the general ledger, specifying the accounts and the nature of the entries.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name
	blngGLTreatmentr
	Refers To blngGLTreatmentc
blng LegalEntity c	
Dinglegarinereye	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The legal entity used to associate the revenue adjustment line with other transactional records in Salesforce Billing.
	This field is a relationship field.
	тно пеи в а гетанопонтр нега.

Field	Details
	Relationship Name blngLegalEntityr Refers To
	blngLegalEntityc
blngNotesc	Type textarea
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description Additional details or comments related to the revenue adjustment line.
blng_RevenueAdjustmentDate_c	Type date
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The date by which the changes to the revenue adjustment line must be incorporated.
blng_RevenueAdjustment_c	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Sort
	Description Required. The total changes created through revenue adjustments to this revenue adjustment line.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngRevenueAdjustmentr
	Relationship Type Master-detail
	Refers To blngRevenueAdjustmentc (the master object)
blngStatusc	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description Required. The status of the revenue adjustment line. Valid values are:
	• Draft

Field	Details
	• Posted
	The default value is Draft.
blng_TargetRevenueSchedule_c	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Sort
	Description Required. The total revenue that is to be allocated.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngTargetRevenueScheduler
	Relationship Type Master-detail
	Refers To blngRevenueSchedulec (the detail object)
blngTypec	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description
	The types of revenue changes supported by the revenue adjustment line. Valid values are:
	• Adjustment
	• Transfer
	The default value is Adjustment.

blng__RevenueAgreement__c

Represents the objects with a revenue schedule related list. The revenue agreement is useful for grouping revenue schedules related to the same transaction, so that you can quickly evaluate revenue amounts for that transaction.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(),
retrieve(), search(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Field	Details
CurrencyIsoCode	Type picklist
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the revenue agreement when multiple currencies are enabled.
Name	Type string
	Properties
	Autonumber, Defaulted on create, Filter, idLookup, Sort
	Description Required. The name of the revenue agreement.
OwnerId	Type reference
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Required. The ID of the record owner.
	This field is a polymorphic relationship field.
	Relationship Name Owner
	Refers To Group, User
blngAccountc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description
	Required. The parent account that's inherited from the order product.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngAccountr
	Refers To Account

Field	Details
blngContractc	Туре
	reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The fields that help customize your renewals and amendments.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngContractr
	Refers To Contract
blngNotesc	Type textarea
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description Additional details or comments related to the revenue agreement.
blngOrderProductc	Туре
	reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description A single revenue agreement is generated for an order product when the revenue schedule for that order product is created. Any amendment orders related to the original order product are also associated with the same revenue agreement. This field is a relationship field.
	This field is a relationship field. Relationship Name blng_OrderProductr
	Refers To OrderItem
blng_Orderc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The order that a sales rep contracted to create or amend this contract record. The order is populated when it's created and is updated only when a contract is amended.
	This field is a relationship field.

Field	Details
	Relationship Name
	blngOrderr
	Refers To
	Order
blmg_TotalAllocatedReveneArtBillings_c	Туре
	currency
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The total revenue impact from billing can vary from the subtotal and total amount (including
	tax) and is used when reallocating revenue across multiple transactions. Additionally, it can
	be configured to create revenue schedules based on this amount.
blrg_TotalAllocatedReveneAntBookings_c	Туре
	currency
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The total revenue impact from bookings can vary from the subtotal and total amount
	(including tax) and is used when reallocating revenue across multiple transactions.
	Additionally, it can be configured to create revenue schedules based on this amount.
blng_TotalRevenueBillings_c	Туре
	currency
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The total revenue billing amount during a specific period.
	The total revenue bining amount during a specific period.
blngTotalRevenueBookingsc	Туре
	currency
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The total revenue booking amount during a specific period.
blng TotalPeverueExpectedAntBillings c	Type
<u> </u>	Type currency
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	cicate, Detauted on cicate, Filter, Millable, Jort, Opuate

Field Details

Description

The revenue that finance operations users expect to come from billing.

blrg_TotalReverueExpectedAntBookings_C Type

currency

Properties

Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update

Description

The revenue that finance operations users expect to come from bookings.

blng_TotalRevenueLiabilityAntBillings_c Tv

Type

currency

Properties

Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update

Description

This user-defined field represents the revenue liability linked to the billing. The revenue liability amount may vary from the subtotal and total amount (including tax). Additionally, it can be set up to generate revenue schedules, using this field as the specified amount on the revenue schedule.

blng_TotalPeverueLiabilityAntBookings_c

Type

currency

Properties

Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update

Description

This user-defined field represents the revenue liability linked to the bookings. The revenue liability amount may vary from the subtotal and total amount (including tax). Additionally, it can be set up to generate revenue schedules, using this field as the specified amount on the revenue schedule.

blng TotalRevenuMostLikelyAntBillings c

Type

currency

Properties

Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update

Description

This user-defined field is the most likely revenue impact from billing for revenue calculations when the revenue amount is uncertain. This field can differ from the subtotal and total amount (with tax).

blng TotalRevenueMostLikelyAntBookings c

Type

currency

Properties

Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update

Details
Description This user-defined field is the most likely revenue impact from bookings for revenue calculations when the revenue amount is uncertain. This field can differ from the subtotal and total amount (with tax).

blng__RevenueDistributionMethod__c

Represents how the revenue of a company is spread over a specific period.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(),
retrieve(), search(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Field	Details
CurrencyIsoCode	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the revenue distribution method when multiple currencies are enabled.
LastReferencedDate	Type dateTime
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The timestamp when the current user last accessed a revenue distribution method record indirectly, for example, through a list view or related record.
LastViewedDate	Type dateTime
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The timestamp when the current user last viewed a revenue distribution method record. If this value is null, it's possible that the user only accessed the revenue distribution method

Field	Details
	record or a related list view (LastReferencedDate), but not viewed the revenue distribution method record rule itself.
Name	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The name of the revenue distribution method.
OwnerId	Туре
	reference
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description
	Required. The ID of the record owner. This field is a polymorphic relationship field.
	Relationship Name Owner
	Refers To Group, User
blngActivec	Type boolean
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description
	Required. Indicates whether the legal entity is active (true) or not (false). To deactivate the legal entity, clear the Active checkbox. This setting won't affect past or existing transactions or assignments. The default value is true.
blng_DistributionMethod_c	Туре
	picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description
	Required. The revenue amount is prorated based on the distribution method. Valid values are:
	• Daily
	• Full Recognition
	• Monthly

Field

Details

blng FullRecognitionDate c

Type

picklist

Properties

Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update

Description

Specifies when revenue is recognized in full. Valid values are:

- Credit Note Date
- Credit Note Line End Date
- Credit Note Line Start Date
- Debit Note Date
- Debit Note Line End Date
- Debit Note Line Start Date
- Invoice Line End Date
- Invoice Line Start Date
- Manual
- Order Product End Date
- Order Product Start Date
- Other

blng MonthlyRecognitionProration c

Type

picklist

Properties

Create, Filter, Group, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update

Description

Required. If your revenue transaction covers a partial period (for example, 15 days in a monthly distribution method), the transaction amount is prorated based on this value. Currently, proration is only possible based on the number of days in the partial period.

blng Notes c

Type

textarea

Properties

Create, Nillable, Update

Description

Additional details or comments related to the revenue distribution method.

blng RevenueScheduleTermEndDate c

Type

picklist

Properties

Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update

Field

Details

Description

The end date of the revenue schedule term. These dates can be sourced from the order product, invoice line, credit note, or debit note. If set to Manual, the user-defined code is referenced to determine the revenue distribution. Valid values are:

- Credit Note Line End Date
- Debit Note Line End Date
- Invoice Line End Date
- Manual
- Order Product End Date
- Other

blng_RevenueScheduleTemStartDate_c Type

picklist

Properties

Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update

Description

The start date of the revenue schedule term. These dates can be sourced from the order product, invoice line, credit note, or debit note. If set to Manual, the user-defined code is referenced to determine the revenue distribution. Valid values are:

- Credit Note Line Start Date
- Debit Note Line Start Date
- Invoice Line Start Date
- Manual
- Order Product Start Date
- Other

blrg_ReveneTransactionCreationProcess_C Type

picklist

Properties

Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update

Description

Required. Specifies whether a revenue schedule and transaction are automatically created based on the value defined in the **Type** field.

Valid values are:

- Automatic
- Manual

The default value is Automatic.

blng__Type__c

Type

picklist

Field	Details
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description Required. The type of revenue transaction used in the revenue distribution method.
	Valid values are:
	• Credit Note
	• Debit Note
	• Invoice
	• Order
	• Other

blng__RevenueRecognitionRule__c

Represents the creation of a revenue schedule for an invoiced order product or invoice line.

(1) Important: Where possible, we changed noninclusive terms to align with our company value of Equality. We maintained certain terms to avoid any effect on customer implementations.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(),
retrieve(), search(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Field	Details
CurrencyIsoCode	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the revenue recognition rule when multiple currencies are enabled.
LastReferencedDate	Type dateTime
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort

Field	Details
	Description The timestamp when the current user last accessed a revenue recognition rule record indirectly, for example, through a list view or related record.
LastViewedDate	Type dateTime
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The timestamp when the current user last viewed a revenue recognition rule record. If this value is null, it's possible that the user only accessed the revenue recognition rule record or a related list view (LastReferencedDate), but not viewed the revenue recognition rule record itself.
Name	Type string
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The name of the revenue recognition rule.
OwnerId	Type reference
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Required. The ID of the record owner.
	This field is a polymorphic relationship field.
	Relationship Name Owner
	Refers To Group, User
blngActivec	Type boolean
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Required. Indicates whether the revenue recognition rule is active (true) or not (false). To deactivate the revenue recognition rule, clear the Active checkbox. This setting won't affect past or existing transactions or assignments. The default value is true.

Field	Details
blng_CreateRevenueSchedule_c	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description Required. The corresponding revenue schedule created for the revenue recognition rule. Valid values are:
	NoYes
blngNotesc	Type textarea
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description Additional details or comments related to the revenue recognition rule.

blng__RevenueRecognitionTreatment__c

Represents how and where the revenue of a product is recognized.



Important: Where possible, we changed noninclusive terms to align with our company value of Equality. We maintained certain terms to avoid any effect on customer implementations.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(), retrieve(), search(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Field	Details
CurrencyIsoCode	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the revenue recognition treatment when multiple currencies are enabled.

Field	Details
LastReferencedDate	Туре
	dateTime
	Properties
	Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The timestamp when the current user last accessed a revenue recognition treatment record indirectly, for example, through a list view or related record.
LastViewedDate	Туре
	dateTime
	Properties
	Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The timestamp when the current user last viewed a revenue recognition treatment record.
	If this value is null, it's possible that the user only accessed the revenue recognition treatment
	record or a related list view (LastReferencedDate), but not viewed the revenue
	recognition treatment record itself.
Name	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The name of the revenue recognition treatment.
blngActivec	Туре
	boolean
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description
	Required. Indicates whether the revenue recognition rule is active (true) or not (false).
	To deactivate the revenue recognition rule, clear the Active checkbox. This setting won't
	affect past or existing transactions or assignments. The default value is <code>true</code> .
blngFlatAmountc	Туре
- <u>-</u>	currency
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The fixed amount to be paid for the revenue recognition treatment.

Field	Details
blngNotesc	Type textarea
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description Additional details or comments related to the revenue recognition treatment.
blngPercentagec	Type percent
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The total percentage applied to the revenue recognition treatment and is null if the line is nontaxable.
blngProcessingOrderc	Type double
	Properties Create, Filter, Sort, Update
	Description Required. If you have multiple revenue recognition treatments targeting a single order product, you can give each of them a value here. The treatments are applied starting with the lowest number.
blng_RevenueAgreementAssociation_c	⁷ Type
	picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The option for associating the revenue schedule to the revenue agreement.
	Valid values are:
	Manual New Agreement
	Not Applicable
	Revised Order Product
	The default value is Not Applicable.
blng_RevenueDistributionMethod_c	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description
	Required. The revenue distribution method used for assigning review across periods.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngRevenueDistributionMethodr
	Refers To blngRevenueDistributionMethodc
blng_RevenueFinanceBook_c	Type reference
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Required. All transactions processed through this treatment record entries in this finance book record.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngRevenueFinanceBookr
	Refers To blngFinanceBookc
blngRevenueGLRulec	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Required. All transactions processed through this treatment record journal entries based on this general ledger rule.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngRevenueGLRuler
	Refers To blngGLRulec
blng_RevenueLegalEntity_c	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	This treatment applies to all order products that were considered under the parent revenue recognition rule and have a matching legal entity.

Field	Details
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name
	blngRevenueLegalEntityr
	Refers To
	blngLegalEntityc
blng_RevenueRecognitionRule_c	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Sort
	Description
	Required. The revenue recognition rule associated with the revenue recognition treatment.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name
	blngRevenueRecognitionRuler
	Relationship Type Master-detail
	Refers To
	blngRevenueRecognitionRulec (the master object)
blng_RevenueScheduleAmount_c	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The type of revenue recognition used in the revenue schedule.
	Valid values are:
	Valid values are: • Bookings Amount
	Bookings Amount
	Bookings AmountRevenue Allocation Amount
	Bookings AmountRevenue Allocation AmountRevenue Expected Amount
	 Bookings Amount Revenue Allocation Amount Revenue Expected Amount Revenue Liability Amount
blng_ReverueStheduleCreationAction_c	 Bookings Amount Revenue Allocation Amount Revenue Expected Amount Revenue Liability Amount Transaction Amount The default value is Transaction Amount.
blng_ReveneScheduleCreationAction_c	 Bookings Amount Revenue Allocation Amount Revenue Expected Amount Revenue Liability Amount Transaction Amount The default value is Transaction Amount. Type picklist
blng_RevenueScheduleOreationPotion_c	 Bookings Amount Revenue Allocation Amount Revenue Expected Amount Revenue Liability Amount Transaction Amount The default value is Transaction Amount.
blng_RevenueStreduleCreationAction_c	 Bookings Amount Revenue Allocation Amount Revenue Expected Amount Revenue Liability Amount Transaction Amount The default value is Transaction Amount. Type picklist Properties

Field	Details
	Valid values are:
	Credit Note Posting
	• Debit Note Posting
	• Invoice Posting
	• Order Activation
	• Other
blngTypec	Type picklist
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description Required. The method for calculating the revenue recognition treatment amount.
	Valid values are:
	• Flat Amount
	• Percentage
	• Remainder
blngUniqueIdc	Type string
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The unique identification number associated with this invoice. This field is unique within your organization.
blngValidateResultc	.,,,,
	string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The outcome of the validation checks performed during the revenue recognition treatment process.

blng__RevenueSchedule__c

Represents the fields that you can use to review the amount of revenue already distributed and remaining to be allocated. A revenue schedule is associated with a revenue transaction.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(),
retrieve(), search(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Field	Details
CurrencyIsoCode	Туре
	picklist
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description
	The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the revenue schedule when multiple currencies are enabled.
LastReferencedDate	Туре
	dateTime
	Properties
	Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The timestamp when the current user last accessed a revenue schedule record indirectly, for example, through a list view or related record.
LastViewedDate	Туре
	dateTime
	Properties
	Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The timestamp when the current user last viewed a revenue schedule record. If this value is null, it's possible that the user only accessed the revenue schedule record or a related list view (LastReferencedDate), but not viewed the revenue schedule record itself.
Name	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Autonumber, Defaulted on create, Filter, idLookup, Sort
	Description
	Required. The name of the revenue schedule.
OwnerId	Туре
	reference

Field	Details
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Required. The ID of the record owner.
	This field is a polymorphic relationship field.
	Relationship Name Owner
	Refers To Group, User
Quotec	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The quote associated with the revenue schedule.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name Quoter
	Refers To SBQQQuotec
blngAccountc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The account of the customer who made the transaction. This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngAccountr
	Refers To Account
blngAdjustmentsc	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The total of all adjustments made to the revenue schedule.
	This field is a calculated field.

Field	Details
blng_AllocatedRevenueAmount_c	Туре
	currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The amount of revenue allocated to or for a revenue schedule.
blngAvailablec	Туре
	currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The total amount on the revenue schedule, including adjustments, that hasn't been distributed to any revenue transactions.
	This field is a calculated field.
blng_BaseCurrencyAmount_c	Туре
	currency
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The amount of the revenue schedule in the base currency of the organization. This value is used to standardize the amount across different currencies.
blng_BaseCurrencyFXDate_c	Type date
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The date on which the Foreign Exchange (FX) rate is applied to convert the amount into the base currency.
blng_BaseCurrencyFXRate_c	Type double
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The FX rate used to convert an amount from a foreign currency to the base currency.
blngBaseCurrencyc	Туре
	string

Field	Details

Properties

Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Description

The primary currency in which the financial transactions are recorded and reported.

blng_BillingFinanceBook_c

Type

reference

Properties

Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Description

The financial ledger that tracks all transactions related to billing, including the allocation of payments to debit note lines. This value ensures that all financial activities are accurately recorded and reported.

This field is a relationship field.

Relationship Name

blng__BillingFinanceBook__r

Refers To

blng__FinanceBook__c

blng_BillingFinancePeriod_c Type

reference

Properties

Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Description

The time frame during which the allocation of payments to revenue schedule is recorded. This period helps in organizing financial data for reporting and analysis, such as monthly or quarterly financial statements.

This field is a relationship field.

Relationship Name

blng__BillingFinancePeriod__r

Refers To

blng__FinancePeriod__c

blng Contract c

Type

reference

Properties

Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Description

The contract associated with the revenue schedule.

This field is a relationship field.

Field	Details
	Relationship Name
	blngContractr
	Refers To Contract
blngCreditNoteLinec	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The credit note line associated with the revenue schedule.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngCreditNoteLiner
	Refers To blngCreditNoteLinec
blngDebitNoteLinec	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The debit note line associated with the revenue schedule.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngDebitNoteLiner
	Refers To blngDebitNoteLinec
blngDeferredBalancec	Туре
	currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	Description The sum of unrecognized revenue in the current period.
	This field is a calculated field.
	This field is a calculated field.

Field	Details
blngDeferredc	Туре
	currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The total amount of revenue that has been deferred and not yet recognized in the revenue schedule.
	This field is a calculated field.
blrg_EstimatedPeverueTransactionCont_c	Туре
	double
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The estimated number of revenue transactions that the schedule contains.
blng_FullRecognitionDate_c	Туре
	date
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The date by which the revenue schedule recognizes all revenue for its transactions. This field is inherited from the revenue distribution method's full recognition date field.
blngInvoiceLinec	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The invoice line associated with the revenue schedule.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blnglnvoiceLiner
	Refers To
	blngInvoiceLinec
blngLegalEntityc	Type
	reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description
	The legal entity associated with the revenue schedule.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngLegalEntityr
	Refers To blngLegalEntityc
blngNotesc	Type textarea
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description Additional details or comments related to the revenue schedule.
blngOrderProductc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The order product associated with the revenue schedule.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngOrderProductr
	Refers To OrderItem
blng Recognize/RevenelastClosedPerical	_ [⊂] Type
	currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The sum of all revenue that has been recognized through the current period.
	This field is a calculated field.
blng_ReveneAgreementAllocationStatus_	$^{ extstyle C}$ Type
	string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description Specifies whether any revenue has been allocated to or from the revenue agreement related to a revenue schedule.
blngRevenueAgreementc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The revenue agreement associated with the revenue schedule.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngRevenueAgreementr
	Refers To blngRevenueAgreementc
blng_RevenueDistributionMethod_c	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The method for calculating how revenue is spread across a period.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngRevenueDistributionMethodr
	Refers To blngRevenueDistributionMethodc
blngRevenueEndDatec	Type date
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The earliest date for revenue recognized under the revenue schedule.
blng_RevenueExpectedAmount_c	Type currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The total amount of revenue that's expected to be received in a revenue schedule.

Field	Details
blng_RevenueFinanceBook_c	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The finance book that records the transactions related to the revenue schedule.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngRevenueFinanceBookr
	Refers To blngFinanceBookc
blng_RevenueLiabilityAmount_c	Type currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The amount of revenue collected for which a product or service hasn't been rendered.
blng_RevenueMostLikelyAmount_c	Туре
	Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The amount of revenue that's most likely to be received.
blng_RevenueRecognitionGTRule_c	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The revenue recognition General Ledger (GL) rule associated with the revenue schedule.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngRevenueRecognitionGLRuler
	Refers To blngGLRulec
blng_RevenueRecogniticaGITreatment_c	Type
	reference

Field	Details
	Properties Control of the Control of
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The revenue recognition GL treatment associated with the revenue schedule.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngRevenueRecognitionGLTreatmentr
	Refers To blngGLTreatmentc
blng_RevenueRecognitionRule_c	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The revenue recognition rule associated with the revenue schedule.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngRevenueRecognitionRuler
	Refers To blngRevenueRecognitionRulec
blng_RevenueRecognitionTreatment_c	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description
	Description The revenue recognition treatment associated with the revenue schedule.
	This field is a relationship field.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngRevenueRecognitionTreatmentr
	Refers To blngRevenueRecognitionTreatmentc
blngRevenueStartDatec	Type date
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description The earliest date for revenue recognized under the revenue schedule.
blng_RevenueTransactionStatus_c	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The status of the process that runs to create revenue transactions for the revenue schedule. Valid values are:
	CompleteErrorQueued
blngTotalRevenueAmountc	Type currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Sort, Update
	Description Required. The total amount available at the time the revenue schedule is created.
blngUnrecognizedc	Type currency
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The total amount of all revenue allocated to a revenue schedule but not yet recognized. This field is a calculated field.

blng__RevenueTransaction__c

Represents the revenue transactions made against an order product.

(1) Important: Where possible, we changed noninclusive terms to align with our company value of Equality. We maintained certain terms to avoid any effect on customer implementations.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(),
retrieve(), search(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Field	Details
CurrencyIsoCode	Туре
	picklist
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The three letter ISO 4217 reviews to and a second with the review to the second to the s
	The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the revenue transaction when multiple currencies are enabled.
LastReferencedDate	Туре
	dateTime
	Properties
	Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The timestamp when the current user last accessed a revenue transaction record indirectly, for example, through a list view or related record.
LastViewedDate	Туре
	dateTime
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The timestamp when the current user last viewed a revenue transaction record. If this value is null, it's possible that the user only accessed the revenue transaction record or a related list view (LastReferencedDate), but not viewed the revenue transaction record itself.
Name	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Autonumber, Defaulted on create, Filter, idLookup, Sort
	Description
	Required. The name of the revenue transaction.
blngAccountc	Туре
	reference
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The account of the customer who made the transaction.
	This field is a relationship field.

Field	Details
	Relationship Name blngAccountr
	Refers To Account
blng_BaseCurrencyAmount_c	Type currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The amount of the revenue transaction in the base currency of the organization. This value is used to standardize the amount across different currencies.
blng_BaseCurrencyFXDatec	Type date
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The date on which the Foreign Exchange (FX) rate is applied to convert the amount into the base currency.
blng_BaseCurrencyFXRatec	Type double
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The FX rate used to convert an amount from a foreign currency to the base currency.
blngBaseCurrencyc	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The primary currency in which the financial transactions are recorded and reported.
blngContractc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The contract associated with the revenue transaction.

Field	Details
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name
	blngContractr
	Refers To Contract
blngCreditNoteLinec	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The credit note line associated with the revenue transaction.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngCreditNoteLiner
	Refers To blngCreditNoteLinec
blngDebitNoteLinec	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The debit note line associated with the revenue transaction.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngDebitNoteLiner
	Refers To blngDebitNoteLinec
blngDeferredBalancec	Type currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The total unrecognized revenue in the current period.
	This field is a calculated field.
blngInvoiceLinec	Type reference

Field	Details
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The invoice line associated with the revenue transaction.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngInvoiceLiner
	Refers To blngInvoiceLinec
blngLegalEntityc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The legal entity associated with the revenue transaction.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngLegalEntityr
	Refers To blngLegalEntityc
blngNotesc	Type textarea
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description Additional details or comments related to the revenue transaction.
blngOrderProductc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The order product associated with the revenue transaction.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngOrderProductr
	Refers To OrderItem

Field	Details
blng_OriginalFinancePeriod_c	Туре
	reference
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The original finance period defined in the revenue schedule.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngOriginalFinancePeriodr
	Refers To
	blngFinancePeriodc
blng_PreviouslyPecognizedPeverue_c	Туре
	currency
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The sum of all prior transactions using the revenue schedule.
blngRevenueAmountc	Туре
	currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The amount of revenue associated with a transaction.
blng RevenueDistributionMethod c	Tuna
	Type string
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The distribution method selected in the revenue schedule. Specifies whether revenue is allocated over a predefined period, recognized all at once, or distributed based on a manually entered time frame.
blng_RevenueFinanceBook_c	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The finance book associated with the revenue transaction.

Field Details blng RevenueFinancePericoUniqueId c Type string **Properties** Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update Description A unique ID of the revenue finance period. blng RevenueFinancePeriod c Type reference **Properties** Create, Filter, Group, Sort Description Required. The revenue finance period associated with the revenue transaction. This field is a relationship field. **Relationship Name** blng__RevenueFinancePeriod__r **Relationship Type** Master-detail **Refers To** blng__FinancePeriod__c (the detail object) blng RevenueRecognitionGLRule c Type reference **Properties** Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update Description The revenue recognition General Ledger (GL) rule associated with the revenue transaction. This field is a relationship field. **Relationship Name** blng__RevenueRecognitionGLRule__r **Refers To** blng__GLRule__c blng RevenueRecognitionGITreatment c Type reference **Properties** Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update Description Description The revenue recognition GL treatment associated with the revenue transaction.

Field	Details
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name
	blngRevenueRecognitionGLTreatmentr
	Refers To blngGLTreatmentc
blng_RevenueRecognitionRule_c	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The revenue recognition rule linked to the revenue transaction, whichis used to calculate the transaction.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngRevenueRecognitionRuler
	Refers To blngRevenueRecognitionRulec
blng RevenueRecognition[Treatment_c	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The revenue recognition treatment linked to the revenue transaction, which is used to calculate the transaction.
blngRevenueSchedulec	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Sort
	Description Required. The revenue schedule associated with the revenue transaction.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngRevenueScheduler
	Relationship Type Master-detail
	Refers To blngRevenueSchedulec (the master object)

Field	Details
blngStatusc	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The status of the revenue transaction.
	Valid values are:
	• Canceled
	• Deferred
	• Recognized
blng_SystemPeriodStartDat	^{CeC} Type date
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The start date of the system period for the revenue transaction.

blng__SubInvoiceLine__c

Represents a detailed line item within an invoice that breaks down the provided charges or services.



(1) Important: Where possible, we changed noninclusive terms to align with our company value of Equality. We maintained certain terms to avoid any effect on customer implementations.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(), retrieve(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Field	Details
CurrencyIsoCode	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the sub invoice line record when multiple currencies are enabled.
Name	Type string
	Properties Autonumber, Defaulted on create, Filter, idLookup, Sort
	Description Required. The name of the sub invoice line.
blng_BillingTransaction_c	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The billing transaction associated with the sub invoice line.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngBillingTransactionr
	Refers To blngBillingTransactionc
blngChargeDatec	Type date
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The transaction date of the sub invoice line.
blngEndDatec	Type date
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The end date of the billed period for this sub invoice line. This value can impact the revenue.
blngInvoiceLinec	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Sort

Field	Details
	Description
	Required. The invoice line associated with the sub invoice line.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngInvoiceLiner
	Relationship Type Master-detail
	Refers To blngInvoiceLinec (the master object)
blngNotesc	Type textarea
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description Additional details or comments related to the sub invoice line.
blngOrderProductc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The order product that generated the sub invoice line.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngOrderProductr
	Refers To OrderItem
blng_Quantityc	Type double
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The quantity invoiced from the order product.
blngStartDatec	Type
	date Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description The start date of the billed period for this sub invoice line. This value can impact the revenue.
blng_Subtotal_c	Туре
	currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The total amount to settle on this sub invoice line, excluding tax.
blngTaxAmountc	Туре
	currency
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The total tax owed on this sub invoice line.
blngUniqueIdc	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	A unique identification number associated with the sub invoice line record. This field is unique within your organization.
blngUnitPricec	Туре
	currency
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The price of the order product.

blng__TaxConfig__c

Represents the tax configuration associated with a billing schedule.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(),
retrieve(), search(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Fields

Field	Details
CurrencyIsoCode	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the tax configuration record when multiple currencies are enabled.
Name	Type string
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Sort, Update
	Description Required. The name of the tax configuration.
SetupOwnerId	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The ID of the record owner.
	This field is a polymorphic relationship field.
	Relationship Name SetupOwner
	Refers To Organization, Profile, User
blngClassNamec	Type
	String
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The Apex class that handles the tax calculations.

blng__TaxIntegration__c

Represents the interaction between Salesforce and external tax calculation services or systems.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(),
retrieve(), search(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Field	Details
AVA_BING_AvaTaxAccountNumber_c	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The account number required to connect to AvaTax, a tax compliance software service for tax calculations.
AVA_BING_AvaTaxLicenseKey_c	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The license key for AvaTax.
AVA_BLNGCustomerCodec	Туре
	picklist
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description
	The customer code that's important for tax calculations or integrations with tax services.
	Valid values are:
	• Id
	• Name
	The default value is Id.
AVA_BLNGDocCodec	Туре
	picklist
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description
	The document code relevant to tax calculations or reporting.
	Valid values are:
	• Id

Field	Details
	• Name
	The default value is Id.
AVA BING Save transactions to Avallax c	Туре
	boolean
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Required. Indicates whether transactions are saved to AvaTax for tax calculation purposes (true) or not (false).
	The default value is true.
AVA_BLNGTestModec	Type boolean
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Required. Indicates whether the tax integration is operating in test mode (true) or not (false).
	The default value is true.
AVA_BLNGValidate_Addressc	Type boolean
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Required. Indicates whether to validate the addresses for tax purposes, in conjunction with a third-party tax service Avalara (true) or not (false).
	The default value is true.
CurrencyIsoCode	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the tax integration record when multiple currencies are enabled.
LastReferencedDate	Туре
	dateTime

Field	Details
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The timestamp when the current user last accessed a tax integration record indirectly, for example, through a list view or related record.
LastViewedDate	Type dateTime
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description
	The timestamp when the current user last viewed a tax integration record. If this value is null, it's possible that the user only accessed the tax integration record or a related list view (LastReferencedDate), but not viewed the billing rule record itself.
Name	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The name of the tax integration.
OwnerId	Туре
	reference
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Required. The ID of the record owner.
	This field is a polymorphic relationship field.
	Relationship Name Owner
	Refers To Group, User
blngActivec	Type boolean
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description
	Required. Indicates whether the tax integration is active (true) or not (false). To deactivate the tax integration, clear the Active checkbox. This setting won't affect past or existing transactions or assignments. The default value is true.

Field	Details
blngDefaultc	Type boolean
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description
	The default value is false.
blngNotesc	Туре
	textarea
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description Additional details or comments related to the tax integration.
blngTaxEnginec	Туре
	picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description Required. An instance of a tax engine provider and the merchant credentials for a specific instance.
	Valid values are:
	Avalara AvaTax
	• Standard
	The default value is Standard.

blng__TaxRate__c

Represents a tax rate for a tax code and country.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(),
retrieve(), search(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Field	Details
CurrencyIsoCode	Туре
	picklist
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the tax rate record when multiple currencies are enabled.
LastReferencedDate	Type dateTime
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The timestamp when the current user last accessed a tax rate record indirectly, for example, through a list view or related record.
LastViewedDate	Type dateTime
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The timestamp when the current user last viewed a tax rate record. If this value is null, it's possible that the user only accessed the tax rate record or a related list view (LastReferencedDate), but not viewed the tax rate record itself.
Name	Type string
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The name of the tax rate.
OwnerId	Туре
	reference
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description
	Required. The ID of the record owner.
	This field is a polymorphic relationship field.

Field	Details
	Relationship Name
	Owner
	Refers To Group, User
blng_AddressComparison_c	Type string
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	Compares the address details provided in the tax rate record to ensure accurate tax calculations.
blngCityc	Type string
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The city of the company that this tax rate record represents.
blngCountryc	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The country of the company that this tax rate record represents.
blngLegalEntityc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The legal entity associated with the tax rate.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngLegalEntityr
	Refers To blngLegalEntityc
blngNotesc	Type textarea

Field	Details
	Properties
	Create, Nillable, Update
	Description Additional details or comments related to the tax rate.
blng_PriorityAddressCamparisan_c	1,700
	string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The priority of tax rates based on address comparisons.
blngPriorityc	Туре
	picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description
	Required. The tax rate to apply when multiple tax rates are available for a given transaction.
	Valid values are:
	• 0
	• 1
	• 2
	• 3
	• 4
	• 5
	• 6
blngRatec	Туре
	percent
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Sort, Update
	Description Stores the rate of a tax.
blngStatec	Туре
	string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The state of the company that this tax rate record represents.

Field	Details
blngTaxCodec	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The product associated to a tax rate.
blngZipCodec	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The zip code of the company that this tax rate record represents.

blng__TaxRule__c

Represents how Salesforce Billing processes tax for the transactions. All products that must be billed require a lookup to a tax rule.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(),
retrieve(), search(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Field	Details
CurrencyIsoCode	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the tax rule record when multiple currencies are enabled.
LastReferencedDate	Type dateTime
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort

Field	Details
	Description The timestamp when the current user last accessed a tax rule record indirectly, for example, through a list view or related record.
LastViewedDate	Туре
	dateTime
	Properties
	Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The timestamp when the current user last viewed a tax rule record. If this value is null, it's possible that the user only accessed the tax rule record or a related list view (LastReferencedDate), but not viewed the tax rule record itself.
Name	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The name of the tax rule.
OwnerId	Type reference
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Required. The ID of the record owner.
	This field is a polymorphic relationship field.
	Relationship Name Owner
	Refers To
	Group, User
blngActivec	Туре
	boolean
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Required. Indicates whether the tax rule is active (true) or not (false). To deactivate the tax rule, clear the Active checkbox. This setting won't affect past or existing transactions or assignments. The default value is true.

Field	Details
blngNotesc	Type textarea
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description Additional details or comments related to the tax rule.
blngTaxableYesNoc	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description Required. Specifies whether the products associated with a tax rule are subject to taxation.
	Valid values are:
	• No
	• Yes
	The default value is Yes.

blng__TaxTreatment__c

Represents how Salesforce and external engines calculate taxes, and the tax engine to use for tax calculation.



(1) Important: Where possible, we changed noninclusive terms to align with our company value of Equality. We maintained certain terms to avoid any effect on customer implementations.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(), retrieve(), search(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Field	Details
CurrencyIsoCode	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the tax treatment record when multiple currencies are enabled.
LastReferencedDate	Type dateTime
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The timestamp when the current user last accessed a tax treatment record indirectly, for example, through a list view or related record.
LastViewedDate	Type dateTime
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The timestamp when the current user last viewed a tax treatment record. If this value is null, it's possible that the user only accessed the tax treatment record or a related list view (LastReferencedDate), but not viewed the tax treatment record itself.
Name	Type string
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The name of the tax treatment.
blng_Active_c	Type boolean
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Required. Indicates whether the tax treatment is active (true) or not (false). To deactivate the legal entity, clear the Active checkbox. This setting won't affect past or existing transactions or assignments. The default value is true.
blngNotesc	Type textarea
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update

Field	Details
	Description Additional details or comments related to the tax treatment.
blngTaxCodec	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The product associated to a tax treatment.
blngTaxGLRulec	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The General Ledger (GL) rule associated with the tax treatment.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngTaxGLRuler
	Refers To blngGLRulec
blngTaxIntegrationc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Sort
	Description Required. The tax integration record associated with tax treatment.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngTaxIntegrationr
	Relationship Type Master-detail
	Refers To blngTaxIntegrationc (the master object)
blngTaxLegalEntityc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description The legal entity associated with the tax treatment.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngTaxLegalEntityr
	Refers To blngLegalEntityc
blngTaxRulec	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Sort
	Description Required. The tax rule associated with the tax treatment.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngTaxRuler
	Relationship Type Master-detail
	Refers To blngTaxRulec (the detail object)

blng__Usage__c

Represents the amount of service consumed over a period of time.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(),
retrieve(), search(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Field	Details
CurrencyIsoCode	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the usage record when multiple currencies are enabled.
LastActivityDate	Type date
	Properties Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort
	Description The timestamp of when a user had last associated a task or event action with the usage record.
LastReferencedDate	Type dateTime
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The timestamp when the current user last accessed a usage record indirectly, for example, through a list view or related record.
LastViewedDate	Type dateTime
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The timestamp when the current user last viewed a usage record. If this value is null, it's possible that the user only accessed the usage record or a related list view (LastReferencedDate), but not viewed the usage record itself.
Name	Type string
	Properties Autonumber, Defaulted on create, Filter, idLookup, Sort
	Description Required. The name of the usage record.
OwnerId	Type reference
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Required. The ID of the record owner.

Field	Details
	This field is a polymorphic relationship field.
	Relationship Name
	Owner
	Refers To Group, User
blngAccountc	Type reference
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The account of the customer who consumed the service.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name
	blngAccountr
	Refers To Account
blng_BaseCurrencyAmount_c	Type currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The amount of the payment in the base currency of the organization. It's used to standardize the amount across different currencies.
blng_BaseCurrencyFXDate_c	Type date
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The date on which the Foreign Exchange (FX) rate is applied to convert an amount into the base currency.
blng_BaseCurrencyFXRate_c	Type double
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The FX rate used to convert an amount from a foreign currency to the base currency.

Field	Details
blngBaseCurrencyc	Туре
	string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The primary currency in which the financial transactions are recorded and reported.
blngEndDateTimec	Type dateTime
	Properties Create, Filter, Sort, Update
	Description
	Required. The end date and time of a particular usage record.
blngErrorMessagec	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description If Salesforce Billing can't calculate a value on this usage record, it shows a message with the
	reason for the error.
blng_MatchingAttribute_c	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	This field is filled in based on the consumption schedule. Usages are evaluated against usage
	summaries where the matching ID, matching attribute, and unit of measure fields align.
	When the charge type is usage, legacy usage pricing does not consider this field.
blngMatchingIdc	Туре
	string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Sort, Update
	Description
	Required. A usage and a usage summary are linked through a lookup relationship. For the
	usage to be included in the usage summary, both records must have the same matching ID.
blngNotesc	Туре
	textarea

Field	Details
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description Additional information or comments related to the usage record.
blngOrderProductc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The order product associated with the usage record. This association helps in tracking the usage of a product that's ordered, which is essential for billing and invoicing purposes.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngOrderProductr
	Refers To OrderItem
blngOrderc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The order associated with the usage record. This field is used to manage and track billing-related information for orders.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blng_Orderr
	Refers To Order
blngPreratedAmountc	Type currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description When users enter a prerated amount on a usage record, Salesforce Billing uses that value for the usage's total rather than the standard calculation of usage.
blngPreratedQuantityc	Туре

Field	Details
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The total number of prerated times an end customer used this service during the usage record's start and end dates.
blngProcessingDatec	Type date
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The date when a particular usage record is processed.
blng_Quantity_c	Type double
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The total number of times an end customer used this service during the usage record's start and end dates.
blngReferenceIdc	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description Reference to source for which the usage record is created.
blng_SourceId_c	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The source associated with the usage record.
blngStartDateTimec	Type dateTime
	Properties Create, Filter, Sort, Update
	Description Required. The start date and time of a usage event.

Field	Details
blngStatusCodec	Туре
	double
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description This field handles and sets all HTTP response codes.
blng_Status_c	Type picklist
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The status of the usage record.
	Valid values are:
	• Error
	• New
	• Processed
	 Queued for subtotal calculation
	• Warning - Unrated
blngSubtotalc	Туре
	currency
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The subtotal amount for a usage record.
blngUnitOfMeasurec	Type picklist
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description
	Populated from the consumption schedule. Usages are rated against usage summaries where the matching ID, matching attribute, and unit of measure fields match. When the charge type is usage, legacy usage pricing ignores this field.
	Valid values are:
	• Hours
	• None

Field	Details
blngUnitPricec	Type currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description A usage summary's unit price is based on where the summary's total quantity falls within the price schedule. When you use volume price schedules, your usage records and usage summary all have the same unit price. But for tiered price schedules, your usages could have different unit prices than the usage summary based on how their quantity ranges fall in each price tier.
blngUsageSummaryc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The usage summary associated with the usage record.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngUsageSummaryr
	Refers To blngUsageSummaryc

blng__UsageSummary__c

Represents the total quantity and value of related usages, and the date ranges for including usage records.

Supported Calls

create(), delete(), describeLayout(), describeSObjects(), getDeleted(), getUpdated(), query(),
retrieve(), search(), undelete(), update(), upsert()

Field	Details
CurrencyIsoCode	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description The three-letter ISO 4217 currency code associated with the usage summary record when multiple currencies are enabled.
LastActivityDate	Type date
	Properties Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort
	Description The timestamp of when a user had last associated a task or event action with the usage summary record.
LastReferencedDate	Type dateTime
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The timestamp when the current user last accessed a usage summary record indirectly, for example, through a list view or related record.
LastViewedDate	Type dateTime
	Properties Filter, Nillable, Sort
	Description The timestamp when the current user last viewed a usage summary record. If this value is null, it's possible that the user only accessed the usage summary record or a related list view (LastReferencedDate), but not viewed the usage summary record itself.
Name	Type string
	Properties Autonumber, Defaulted on create, Filter, idLookup, Sort
	Description Required. The name of the usage summary record.
OwnerId	Type reference
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Required. The ID of the record owner.

Field	Details
	This field is a polymorphic relationship field.
	Relationship Name
	Owner
	Refers To Group, User
blng_Accountc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The account of the customer who consumed the service.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngAccountr
	Refers To
	Account
blng_AppliedUnitPricec	Type currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	Reserved for internal use.
blng_BaseCurrencyAmount_c	Туре
	currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The amount of the payment in the base currency of the organization. It's used to standardize the amount across different currencies.
blng_BaseCurrencyFXDate_c	Туре
	date
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The date on which the Foreign Exchange (FX) rate is applied to convert an amount into the base currency.

Field	Details
blng_BaseCurrencyFXRate_c	Type double
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The FX rate used to convert an amount from a foreign currency to the base currency.
blngBaseCurrencyc	Туре
	string
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The primary currency in which the financial transactions are recorded and reported.
blngBilledQuantityc	Туре
	double
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The total quantity of this summary's usage that Salesforce Billing has billed. The billed quantity can contain usage from one or more usage records.
blngBilledRevenuec	Туре
	currency
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description Reserved for internal use.
blngGroupedQuantityc	Туре
	double
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description
	The total quantity of usage records that are grouped together for a specific order product.
blng_IncludedUnbilledUsage_c	Туре
	double
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description Used only when the order product charge type is usage. Not used when a usage summary has an order product consumption schedule.
blng_IncludedUsageExhausted_c	Type boolean
	Properties Create, Defaulted on create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Used only when the order product charge type is usage. Not used when a usage summary has an order product consumption schedule.
	The default value is false.
blngInvoiceLinec	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The invoice line that represents invoiced billings from this usage summary.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngInvoiceLiner
	Refers To blngInvoiceLinec
blng_InvoiceRnProcessingStatus_c	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description The order product status as evaluated by the invoice run.
	Valid values are:
	• Completed
	• Error
	• In Progress
	Pending Billing
	Will Not Invoice
blng_InvoiceRunStartDate_c	Туре
	dateTime

Field	Details
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The start date of the invoice run associated with the usage summary record.
blng_InvoiceRunStatusIndex_c	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The text string that mirrors the value of the invoice run processing status. Users must not edit this system field.
blngInvoiceRunc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The invoice run associated with the usage summary record.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blnglnvoiceRunr
	Refers To blngInvoiceRunc
blngInvoicec	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The invoice that contains an invoice line for this usage summary.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blnglnvoicer
	Refers To blngInvoicec
blng_MatchingAttributec	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description Populated from the consumption schedule. Usages are rated against usage summaries where the matching ID, matching attribute, and unit of measure match. When charge type is usage, legacy usage pricing ignores this field.
blngMatchingIdc	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description Salesforce Billing uploads usage only to usage summaries with matching IDs. Create a workflow rule that populates your usages and usage summaries based on certain criteria.
blngNextBillingDatec	Type date
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The date that this usage summary is due for billing. The target date on an invoice run must be after this date for the usage summary to be invoiced. When you use bill now, the effective target date must be after this date.
blngNotesc	Type textarea
	Properties Create, Nillable, Update
	Description Additional information or comments related to the usage summary record.
blng_OnderItenConsumptionSchedule_c	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description Lookup to the order item consumption schedule for pricing. Populated only for products with consumption schedules.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngOrderItemConsumptionScheduler
	Refers To SBQQOrderItemConsumptionSchedulec

Field	Details
blng_OrderProductc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The order product associated with the usage summary record. This association helps in tracking the usage of a product that's ordered, which is essential for billing and invoicing purposes.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngOrderProductr
	Refers To OrderItem
blng_Orderc	Type reference
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The order associated with the usage summary record. This field is used to manage and track billing-related information for orders.
	This field is a relationship field.
	Relationship Name blngOrderr
	Refers To Order
blng_OverrideStatus_c	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description When the status is set to Canceled, the usage summary does not load any additional usage, and the unique IDis cleared. Despite this, the usage summary can still be invoiced, as invoicing isn't blocked.
blng_OverrideSummaryFndDate_c	Type date
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Details Field

Description

Salesforce Billing automatically calculates your summary's start and end dates based on your order product's next billing date and billing frequency. However, you can enter a date in this field to override the default summary end date.

blng OverrideSummaryStartDate c

date

Properties

Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Sort, Update

Description

Salesforce Billing automatically calculates your summary's start and end dates based on your order product's next billing date and billing frequency. However, you can enter a date in this field to override the default summary start date.

blng PreratedAmount c

Type

currency

Properties

Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update

Description

The total amount value of prerated usage across all of this summary's usage records. When users enter a prerated amount on a usage record, Salesforce Billing uses that value for the usage's total rather than the standard calculation.

blng__PreratedQuantity__c Type

double

Properties

Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update

Description

The total quantity value of prerated usage across all of this summary's usage records. When users enter a prerated amount on a usage record, Salesforce Billing uses that value for the usage's total rather than the standard calculation.

blng Source c

Type

picklist

Properties

Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update

Description

The source of the usage summary.

Valid values are:

- External
- Standard

Field	Details
blngStatusc	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description
	The status of the usage summary.
	Valid values are:
	• Cancelled
	• New
	• Processed
	Queued For Group Calculation
	Queued For Invoice
	Queued For Subtotal Calculation
blngSubtotalc	Туре
	currency
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The subtotal amount for a usage summary record.
blngSummaryEndDatec	Type date
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Required. Salesforce Billing includes usage in a usage summary if the records have matching IDs and the usage's processing date falls within the summary's start and end dates.
blngSummaryStartDatec	Type date
	Properties
	Create, Filter, Group, Sort, Update
	Description Required. Salesforce Billing includes usage in a usage summary if the records have matching IDs and the usage's processing date falls within the summary's start and end dates.
blngTotalQuantityc	Туре
	double
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update

Field	Details
	Description The total quantity of the summary's usage that's consumed.
blngTotalRevenuec	Type currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description Reserved for internal use.
blngUnbilledQuantityc	Type double
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The quantity of the summary's usage that isn't invoiced.
blngUnbilledRevenuec	Type currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description Reserved for internal use.
blngUniqueIdc	Type string
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, idLookup, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description A unique identification number associated with the usage summary record. This field is unique within your organization.
blngUnitOfMeasurec	Type picklist
	Properties Create, Filter, Group, Nillable, Restricted picklist, Sort, Update
	Description Populated from the consumption schedule. Usages are rated against usage summaries where the matching ID, matching attribute, and unit of measure fields match. When charge type is usage, legacy usage pricing ignores this field.
	Valid values are:

Field	Details
	• Hours
	• None
blngUnitPricec	Туре
	currency
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description A usage summary's unit price is based on where the summary's total quantity falls within the price schedule. When you use volume price schedules, your usage records and usage summary have the same unit price. But for tiered price schedules, your usages could have different unit prices than the usage summary based on how their quantity ranges fall in each price tier.
blngUsageCountc	Type double
	Properties Create, Filter, Nillable, Sort, Update
	Description The number of usage records rated against this usage summary. The number doesn't change when a rated usage record is deleted.

CHAPTER 3 Salesforce Billing Standard Objects

Salesforce Billing provides access to some standard objects. These objects are available only in Salesforce orgs where the Salesforce Billing managed package is provisioned.

For more information about these standard objects, refer to these resources.

- AssetAction
- AssetStatePeriod
- AssetActionSource
- AssetStatePeriodAttribute
- LegalEntity
- FinanceBalanceShapshot
- FinanceTransaction

CHAPTER 4 Salesforce Billing Developer Guides & Lightning Components

In this chapter ...

- Salesforce Billing Payment Gateway Developer Guide
- Salesforce Billing Tax Integration Developer Guide
- Revenue Recognition Service Developer Guide
- Hosted Card
 Payments Lightning
 Component
- REST API for Converting Invoice Lines with Negative Balances
- Set Up Standalone Orders with API
- Salesforce Billing Apex Reference

Want to get started developing with Salesforce Billing? Check out developer guides, plugins, and Lightning components.



Note: The documentation in this developer guide is for the Salesforce Billing managed package. If you're looking for developer documentation for Revenue Cloud, see Get Started with Revenue Cloud Developer Resources.

Salesforce Billing Payment Gateway Developer Guide

Use Salesforce Billing gateway API to enable communication between Salesforce Billing and external payment gateways. Salesforce Billing can integrate with payment gateways that process credit card and ACH transactions. While we provide several default integration options, you can also use our payment gateway API to support custom integrations.

Get Started with Salesforce Billing Payment Gateway API

Use Salesforce Billing gateway API to enable communication between Salesforce Billing and external payment gateways.

Payment Gateway Class Reference

Review the classes and methods available when working with payment gateways in Salesforce Billing.

Get Started with Salesforce Billing Payment Gateway API

Use Salesforce Billing gateway API to enable communication between Salesforce Billing and external payment gateways.

Salesforce Billing Global Payment API

Salesforce Billing exposes payment transactions as global API. When you're working with our transaction API in your payment gateway, review important guidelines.

Integrating a Payment Gateway Package

Configure Salesforce Billing and your payment gateway package to communicate with an external payment gateway.

Salesforce Billing Global Payment API

Salesforce Billing exposes payment transactions as global API. When you're working with our transaction API in your payment gateway, review important guidelines.

Salesforce Billing acts as a pass-through layer for transactions. It routes the processing of input parameters to a payment gateway package and then returns the result of the transaction to the API caller.



Important: Salesforce Billing doesn't perform any implicit operations as a result of calling the transaction API. Our global methods provide only a layer to interact with a payment gateway to process a payment transaction. For example, calling the chargeTransaction global API on its own doesn't create a payment transaction object or a payment object.

All global methods in the blng namespace use the following input parameter structure.

Input - Map<String, TransactionParameter> mapOfTransactionParameterById

The map represents a unique string, such as an invoice number. The value is an instance of the TransactionParameter class, which contains the information needed to build a payment request.

All global methods in the blng namespace use the following output parameter structure.

Output - List<TransactionResult>

When a payment gateway sends a response following a transaction request, your payment gateway package evaluates the response and stores the information in the TransactionResult class.

Salesforce Billing global payment API includes the following methods.

API Method Name	Description
generateToken	Generates a token for a given input.

API Method Name	Description
authorizeTransaction	Authorizes a transaction.
captureTransaction	Captures an unauthorized transaction.
voidRefundTransaction	Voids a refund transaction.
chargeTransaction	Charges a transaction.
voidTransaction	Voids a payment transaction (charge or capture).
refundTransaction	Refunds a payment transaction for a payment that was made previously in the same gateway.
voidTokenTransaction	Voids a token.
getPaymentStatus	Identifies the status of a payment transaction.
getRefundStatus	Identifies the status of a refund transaction.
nonReferredRefund	Performs a nonreference refund.

Sending Transaction Information with TransactionParameter

The transaction parameter class represents a list of transaction field values that Salesforce Billing sends to the payment gateway package. You can set the class's attributes through Salesforce Billing global API, the Payment Center, or a payment run.

Mapping Gateway Responses to Payment Transactions with TransactionResult

The TransactionResult class contains a list of information that the payment gateway sends in response to a transaction request. For charge transactions, your payment gateway package evaluates this information and maps it to a Payment Transaction record in Salesforce Billing.

Sending Transaction Information with TransactionParameter

The transaction parameter class represents a list of transaction field values that Salesforce Billing sends to the payment gateway package. You can set the class's attributes through Salesforce Billing global API, the Payment Center, or a payment run.

For complete reference information on the TransactionParameter class's methods and parameters, review TransactionParameter Class.

This table shows how to set TransactionParameter's attributes for transactions made through Salesforce Billing Global API, the Payment Center, or payment runs. Billing Global API attributes are optional unless otherwise indicated.

TransactionParameter Attribute	Source: Billing Global API	Source: Payment Center	Source: Payment Run
PaymentMethod	setPaymentMethod(paymentMethod)	Set by the Billing package.	Set by the Billing package.
Invoice	setInvoice (invoice) Required for sending Level 2 (L2) and Level 3 (L3) parameters when making a payment against an invoice.	Set by the Billing package for payments made against an invoice.	Set by the Billing package for all payments.

TransactionParameter Attribute	Source: Billing Global API	Source: Payment Center	Source: Payment Run
	Level 2 includes data such as tax details and customer codes. Level 3 includes additional details such as item descriptions and quantities. Level 2 and Level 3 payment processing is used especially for B2B and B2G transactions.		
InvoiceLine	SetInvoiceLine (line) Sets a list of invoice lines. Required for sending L2 and L3 parameters when making a payment against one or more invoice lines.	Set by the Billing package for payments made against an invoice line.	Not set.
Account	setAccount (accountInstance)	Set by the Billing package.	Set by the Billing package.
RequestBody	setRequestBody (requestBody)	Set by the payment gateway package. Contains the request sent to the gateway.	Set by the payment gateway package. Contains the request sent to the gateway.
FirstName	setFirstName(firstName)	Set by the Billing package.	Set by the Billing packag.e
LastName	setLastName(lastName)	Set by the Billing package.	Set by the Billing package.
Emailld	setEmailId(emailId)	Set by the Billing package.	Set by the Billing package.
Street	setStreet(street)	Set by the Billing package.	Set by the Billing package.
City	setCity(city)	Set by the Billing package.	Set by the Billing package.
State	setState(state)	Set by the Billing package.	Set by the Billing package.
ZIP code	setZipCode(zipCode)	Set by the Billing package.	Set by the Billing package.
Country	setCountry(country)	Set by the Billing package.	Set by the Billing package.
Phone	setPhone(phone)	Set by the Billing package.	Set by the Billing package.
Amount	setAmount(amount)	Set by the Billing package.	Set by the Billing package.
Transaction	Not set	Not set	Set by the Billing package.
RequestingInvoiceId	setRepestirgTrusiceTc((respectirgTrusiceTc)	Set by the Billing package for L2 and L3 parameters.	Set by the Billing package for L2 and L3 parameters.
CardCodeResponse	setCardCodeResponse Required only for reference refund transactions made through Payeezy.	Set by the Billing package for reference refunds made through Payeezy.	Not set

TransactionParameter Attribute	Source: Billing Global API	Source: Payment Center	Source: Payment Run
Merchantld	setMerchantId()	Set by the Billing package for reference refunds made through Payeezy.	Not set
Gatewayld	setGateway (gateway) Sets the transaction ID for the payment. Required only for reference refund transactions. Required to set by caller for Reference Refund transaction. It is transaction id for the payment.	Set by the Billing package as Gateway reference ID for payment. Used in reference refund transactions.	Not set
Currencyld	setCurrencyId (currencyId) Set only for transactions made through Payeezy.	Set only for transactions made through Payeezy.	Set only for transactions made through Payeezy.
Gateway	setGateway (gateway) Required. Contains the ID of the Salesforce Billing payment gateway record used in the transaction.	Set by the Billing package.	Set by the Billing package.
ResponseValueByKey	Not set	Not set.	NA
Payment	setPayment (paymentInstance) Required to set when calling refundTransaction. Must query all fields from the payment instance except system fields.	Set by the Billing package when RefundTransaction is called. Must query all fields from the payment instance except system fields.	NA

(3)

Example:

```
global class TransactionParameter
{
    global Map<string, string> mapOfResponseValueByKey = new Map<string, string>();

    // Transaction Result
    global TransactionResult transactionResult = new TransactionResult();

    global void setTransactionUseCase(TransactionUseCase transactionUseCase) {}

    global TransactionUseCase getTransactionUseCase() {}

    global void setTransactionFrequencyType(TransactionFrequency
```

```
transactionFrequencyType) {}
   global TransactionFrequency getTransactionFrequencyType() {}
   global void setIsCredentialsOnFile(Boolean isCredentialsOnFile) {}
   global Boolean getIsCredentialsOnFile() {}
   //Set RequestingInvoiceId
   global void setRequestingInvoiceId(Id requestingInvoiceId) {}
   //Get RequestingInvoiceId
   global Id getRequestingInvoiceId() {}
   //Set cardCodeResponse
   global void setCardCodeResponse(String cardCodeResponse) {}
   // Get cardCodeResponse
   global String getCardCodeResponse() {}
   // Set requestingCreditCardNumber
   global void setCardNumber(String requestingCreditCardNumber) {}
   // Get requestingCreditCardNumber
   global String getCardNumber() {}
   // Set Payment
   global void setPayment(Payment__c paymentInstance) {}
   // Get Payment
   global Payment__c getPayment() {}
   // Get merchantRefId
   global String getMerchantId() {}
   //Set MerchantId
   global void setMerchantId(String merchantId) {}
   //set Gateway ID
   global void setGateWayId(String gatewayId) {}
   // Get Gateway ID
   global String getGateWayId() {}
   // Get ResponseValueByKey
   global Map<string, string> getResponseValueByKey() {}
   // Set Gateway
   global void setGateWay(PaymentGateway c gateway) {}
   // Get Gateway
   global PaymentGateway c getGateWay() {}
   // Set PaymentMethod
```

```
global void setPaymentMethod(PaymentMethod c paymentMethod) {}
// Get PaymentMethod
global PaymentMethod__c getPaymentMethod() {}
// Set Invoice
global void setInvoice(Invoice c invoice) {}
// Get Invoice
global Invoice__c getInvoice() {}
// Set listOfInvoiceLine
global void setInvoiceLine(InvoiceLine c line) {}
// Get listOfInvoiceLine
global List<InvoiceLine_c> getInvoiceLine() {}
// Set Transaction
global void setTransaction(PaymentTransaction c transactionInstance) {}
// Get Transaction
global PaymentTransaction c getTransaction() {}
// Set Account
global void setAccount(Account accountInstance) {}
// Get Account
global Account getAccount() {}
// Set RequestBody
global void setRequestBody(String requestBody) {}
// Get RequestBody
global String getRequestBody() {}
// Set FirstName
global void setFirstName(String firstName) {}
// Get FirstName
global String getFirstName() {}
// Set LastName
global void setLastName(String lastName) {}
// Get LastName
global String getLastName() {}
// Set EmailId
global void setEmailId(String emailId) {}
// Get EmailId
global String getEmailId() {}
// Set Street
```

```
global void setStreet(String street) {}
// Get Street
global String getStreet() {}
// Set City
global void setCity(String city) {}
// Get City
global String getCity() {}
// Set State
global void setState(String state) {}
// Get State
global String getState() {}
// Set ZipCode
global void setZipCode(String zipCode) {}
// Get ZipCode
global String getZipCode() {}
// Set Country
global void setCountry(String country) {}
// Get Country
global String getCountry() {}
// Set Phone
global void setPhone(String phone) {}
// Get Phone
global String getPhone() {}
// Set Currency Id
global void setCurrencyId(String currencyId) {}
// Get Currency Id
global String getCurrencyId() {}
// Set Amount
global void setAmount(String amount) {}
// Get Amount
global String getAmount() {}
```

Mapping Gateway Responses to Payment Transactions with TransactionResult

The TransactionResult class contains a list of information that the payment gateway sends in response to a transaction request. For charge transactions, your payment gateway package evaluates this information and maps it to a Payment Transaction record in Salesforce Billing.

For complete reference information on the TransactionResult class's methods and parameters, review TransactionResult Class.

TransactionResult methods map their output to specific fields on the payment transaction object.



Note: The payment gateway package doesn't create a payment transaction for tokenization and refund transactions.

Table 1: TransactionResult to Payment Transaction Field Mapping

Field Label	API Name	TransactionResult Method
Card Code Response	blngCardCodeResponsec	setCardCodeResponse()
Gateway Status	blngGatewayStatusc	setGatewayStatus()
Request-Type of Payment	blngRequestTypeOfPaymentc	Internal
Response	blngResponsec	Internal
Response Code	blngResponseCodec	setResponseCode()
Response Gateway ID	blngGatewaylDc	setGatewayId()
Response Message	blngResponseMessagec	setResponseMessage()
Response Status	blngResponseStatusc	Internal
Status	blngStatusc	Internal
Туре	blngTypec	Charge, Refund, Void

Integrating a Payment Gateway Package

Configure Salesforce Billing and your payment gateway package to communicate with an external payment gateway.

Configure Payment Gateways in Salesforce

Install a payment gateway package and configure your payment gateway entities to communicate with your payment gateway provider.

Salesforce Billing Payment Gateway Interfaces

A payment gateway package requires three interfaces to communicate with Salesforce Billing. Each interface contains methods that the user-defined PaymentGatewayAPI class implements to process different types of transaction actions.

Configuring Salesforce Billing to Access Your PaymentGatewayAPI Class

To integrate with a payment gateway package, Salesforce Billing must know which gateway package class contains the methods required to process a payment request and convert the results to data that Salesforce Billing can read. The Salesforce Billing custom setting Payment Gateway Config defines the class that Salesforce Billing calls from the gateway package. You must also add code that installs a record of the class in PaymentGatewayConfig.

Mapping Gateway Response Codes to Salesforce Billing Gateway Statuses

Payment gateways have many response codes for payment operations. Salesforce Billing categorizes these codes into one of seven Gateway Status field values on your payment transaction record. The gateway status lets you know the result of a gateway call and whether you must correct anything. When you configure a payment gateway package, create metadata that maps your chosen gateway's response codes to one of the statuses.

Capture Externally Authorized Payments

Authorize payments in an external system, then capture the payment in Salesforce Billing using our Capture Transaction API methods. You can then use Salesforce Billing to manage the payment lifecycle and settle invoices.

Merchant Credential Fields

Each payment gateway package installs merchant credential fields on the Salesforce Billing payment gateway object. You can use these fields to provide merchant information when making a transaction request to the payment gateway.

Required Gateway Classes

All payment gateway and payment method records require several fields to communicate with the payment gateway, regardless of the gateway type. Specific gateway types may also require additional fields.

Configure a Payment Gateway in Salesforce Billing

Configure Salesforce Billing to send data to your chosen payment gateway.

Configure Payment Gateways in Salesforce

Install a payment gateway package and configure your payment gateway entities to communicate with your payment gateway provider.

- (1) Important: If a custom payment gateway doesn't send the paymentGatewayToken, Salesforce Billing payment gateway API submits an extra tokenization call, which creates a new payment method.
- **1.** Install your payment gateway package.
 - Salesforce Billing provides payment gateway packages for AuthorizeDotNet, Cybersource, Payeezy, and PayFlowPro. You can also use packages for other gateways.
- 2. In Salesforce Billing, create a payment gateway record and set its Gateway Type field to your payment gateway. If your gateway name doesn't appear as a Gateway Type value, add it to the picklist.
- 3. Review the merchant credential fields on your payment gateway and enter the necessary merchant information.
 - Your payment gateway record requires merchant credential fields. It sends the values of these fields as API to the payment gateway. Each payment gateway package installs different fields based on the needs of the payment gateway provider. For more information, review Merchant Credential Fields.
- 4. Check the payment gateway's Active field.
- 5. Check the payment gateway's Default field.
 - The payment gateway's Default checkbox indicates that Salesforce Billing uses the gateway's merchant credentials if an ACH or credit card payment transaction doesn't provide stored credentials. Otherwise, the transaction fails. A payment gateway's Active and Default fields must be selected for the gateway entity to pass its information to the payment gateway provider.

Salesforce Billing Payment Gateway Interfaces

A payment gateway package requires three interfaces to communicate with Salesforce Billing. Each interface contains methods that the user-defined PaymentGatewayAPI class implements to process different types of transaction actions.

Creating a PaymentGateway Interface

The PaymentGateway interface contains several basic transaction methods that the PaymentGatewayAPI class implements to handle gateway requests. The methods allow PaymentGatewayAPI to create a credit card token, process a payment charge, void a payment, authorize a payment, and refund a payment.

Creating a PaymentGateways Interface

The PaymentGateways interface uses the processPayments method, which evaluates the payment transaction's type to perform a payment action.

Creating a PaymentGatewayStatus Interface

Salesforce Billing implements the PaymentGatewayStatus interface to populate the TransactionResult's GatewayStatus enum with the value of the return code that the external gateway set in transactionResult.

Creating a PaymentGateway Interface

The PaymentGateway interface contains several basic transaction methods that the PaymentGatewayAPI class implements to handle gateway requests. The methods allow PaymentGatewayAPI to create a credit card token, process a payment charge, void a payment, authorize a payment, and refund a payment.

Create a credit card token

Map<String, TransactionResult> generateToken(Map<String, TransactionParameter>
mapOfTransactionParameterById,PaymentGatewayParameter paymentGatewayParameter);

Process a payment charge

Map<String, TransactionResult> chargeTransaction(Map<String, TransactionParameter>
mapOfTransactionParameterById, PaymentGatewayParameter paymentGatewayParameter);

Void a payment

Map<String, TransactionResult> voidTransaction(Map<String, TransactionParameter>
mapOfTransactionParameterById, PaymentGatewayParameter paymentGatewayParameter);

Authorize a payment

Map<String, TransactionResult> authorizeTransaction(Map<String, TransactionParameter>
mapOfTransactionParameterById, PaymentGatewayParameter paymentGatewayParameter);

Refund a payment

Map<String, TransactionResult> refundTransaction(Map<String, TransactionParameter>
mapOfTransactionParameterById, PaymentGatewayParameter paymentGatewayParameter);

So, if you want your gateway package to process a chargeTransaction sent from Salesforce Billing, the package must implement chargeTransaction within a PaymentGatewayAPI class. Let's see how this configuration looks in a sample CyberSource implementation.



Example:

```
global class CyberSourceAPI implements blng.PaymentGateWay
{
    global static Map<String, blng.TransactionResult> generateToken(Map<String,
blng.TransactionParameter> mapOfTransactionParameterById)
    {
        return service().generateToken(mapOfTransactionParameterById);
    }

    global static Map<String, blng.TransactionResult> authorizeTransaction(Map<String,
    blng.TransactionParameter> mapOfTransactionParameterById)
    {
```

```
return service().authorizeTransaction(mapOfTransactionParameterById);
}

global static Map<String, blng.TransactionResult> chargeTransaction(Map<String, blng.TransactionParameter> mapOfTransactionParameterById)
{
    return service().chargeTransaction(mapOfTransactionParameterById);
}

global static Map<String, blng.TransactionResult> voidTransaction(Map<String, blng.TransactionParameter> mapOfTransactionParameterById)
{
    return service().voidTransaction(mapOfTransactionParameterById);
}

global static Map<String, blng.TransactionResult> refundTransaction(Map<String, blng.TransactionParameterPyId)
{
    return service().refundTransaction(mapOfTransactionParameterById);
}
</pre>
```

Creating a PaymentGateways Interface

The PaymentGateways interface uses the processPayments method, which evaluates the payment transaction's type to perform a payment action.

The PaymentGateways interface calls the processPayments method, which evaluates the TransactionParameter object.

```
global interface PaymentGateways
{
    Map<String, TransactionResult> processPayments(Map<String, TransactionParameter>
mapOfTransactionParameterById, PaymentGatewayParameter paymentGatewayParameter);
}
```

The processPayments method can perform different actions based on the TransactionType value of the TransactionParameter's paymentGatewayParameter. When you configure your PaymentGateways interface, define all the TransactionType string variables that processPayments can accept. Then, add your logic for identifying the transaction type and calling the appropriate method. We've provided a sample here for a CyberSource payment gateway implementation.

0

Example:

```
private static CyberSource CyberSourceInstance;
   // VARIABLES
   //Billing sends following strings for the transactions
   private static final String GENERATE TOKEN = 'generateToken';
   private static final String AUTHORIZE TRANSACTION = 'authorizeTransaction';
   private static final String CHARGE TRANSACTION = 'chargeTransaction';
   private static final String VOID TRANSACTION = 'voidTransaction';
   private static final String REFUND TRANSACTION = 'refundTransaction';
   private static final String CAPTURE TRANSACTION = 'captureTransaction';
   private static final String VOID REFUND TRANSACTION = 'voidRefundTransaction';
   private static final String VOID TOKEN TRANSACTION = 'voidTokenTransaction';
   private static final String GET PAYMENT STATUS = 'getPaymentStatus';
   private static final String GET REFUND STATUS = 'getRefundStatus';
   private static final String NON REFERRED REFUND = 'nonReferredRefund';
   private static final String PROCESS PAYMENTS = 'processPayments';
   // Methods
   global static Map<String, blng.TransactionResult> processPayments(Map<String,
blng.TransactionParameter> mapOfTransactionParameterById, blng.PaymentGatewayParameter
paymentGatewayParameter)
   {
      if(paymentGatewayParameter.getTransactionType() == GENERATE TOKEN)
          return generateToken(mapOfTransactionParameterById);
      else if(paymentGatewayParameter.getTransactionType() == AUTHORIZE TRANSACTION)
          return authorizeTransaction(mapOfTransactionParameterById);
       else if(paymentGatewayParameter.getTransactionType() == CHARGE TRANSACTION)
          return chargeTransaction(mapOfTransactionParameterById);
       else if(paymentGatewayParameter.getTransactionType() == VOID TRANSACTION)
          return voidTransaction(mapOfTransactionParameterById);
       else if(paymentGatewayParameter.getTransactionType() == REFUND TRANSACTION)
          return refundTransaction(mapOfTransactionParameterById);
       else if(paymentGatewayParameter.getTransactionType() == CAPTURE TRANSACTION)
         return captureTransaction(mapOfTransactionParameterById);
      else if (paymentGatewayParameter.getTransactionType() == VOID REFUND TRANSACTION)
       {
```

```
return voidRefundTransaction(mapOfTransactionParameterById);
}
else if(paymentGatewayParameter.getTransactionType() == VOID_TOKEN_TRANSACTION)

{
    return voidTokenTransaction(mapOfTransactionParameterById);
}
else if(paymentGatewayParameter.getTransactionType() == GET_PAYMENT_STATUS)
{
    return getPaymentStatus(mapOfTransactionParameterById);
}
else if(paymentGatewayParameter.getTransactionType() == GET_REFUND_STATUS)
{
    return getRefundStatus(mapOfTransactionParameterById);
}
else if(paymentGatewayParameter.getTransactionType() == NON_REFERRED_REFUND)
{
    return nonReferredRefund(mapOfTransactionParameterById);
}
return NULL;
}
```

Creating a PaymentGatewayStatus Interface

Salesforce Billing implements the PaymentGatewayStatus interface to populate the TransactionResult's GatewayStatus enum with the value of the return code that the external gateway set in transactionResult.

```
global interface PaymentGateWayStatus
{
    void populateGatewayStatus(TransactionResult transactionResult);
}
```

So, if you want your gateway package to process a chargeTransaction sent from Salesforce Billing, the package must implement chargeTransaction within a PaymentGatewayAPI class. Let's see how this configuration looks in a sample CyberSource implementation.

```
global class CyberSourceAPI implements blng.PaymentGateWay, blng.PaymentGateWays,
blng.PaymentGateWayStatus
{
    /**
    Implement other methods as described above
    */
    private static CyberSource service()
    {
        if (NULL == CyberSourceInstance)
        {
            CyberSourceInstance = CyberSource.getInstance();
        }
        return CyberSourceInstance;
}
    /**
    * @name populateGatewayStatus
```

```
* @description Method that populates the GatewayStatus enum on the TransactionResult,

* given return codes that are already set in the TransactionResults

* @param transactionResult

*/
global static void populateGatewayStatus(blng.TransactionResult transactionResult)
{
    service().populateGatewayStatus(transactionResult);
}
```

Configuring Salesforce Billing to Access Your PaymentGatewayAPI Class

To integrate with a payment gateway package, Salesforce Billing must know which gateway package class contains the methods required to process a payment request and convert the results to data that Salesforce Billing can read. The Salesforce Billing custom setting Payment Gateway Config defines the class that Salesforce Billing calls from the gateway package. You must also add code that installs a record of the class in PaymentGatewayConfig.

First, create your primary gateway package class. For ease of reference, name it after your payment gateway, followed by "API." The class must implement all three of our payment gateway interfaces. Here's an example for CyberSource.

```
global class CyberSourceAPI implements blng.PaymentGateWay, blng.PaymentGateWays,
blng.PaymentGateWayStatus
{}
```

Next, add code that lets you install a record of the class in PaymentGatewayConfig. For this example, we've titled our method insertPaymentGatewayConfigCustomSettings.

```
public void insertPaymentGatewayConfigCustomSettings()
   String gatewayName = 'CyberSource';
   List<br/>blng PaymentGatewayConfig c> listofConfiguration = new
List<blng PaymentGatewayConfig c>();
   blng__PaymentGatewayConfig__c gateway = new blng__PaymentGatewayConfig__c(
           Name = gatewayName,
           blng ClassName c = CyberSource.class.getName().substringBefore(gatewayName)
+ gatewayName + 'API');
   listofConfiguration.add(gateway);
   // get the all custom settings to check whether system has already settings or not
   Map<String, blng PaymentGatewayConfig c> mapOfConfigurationValues =
blng PaymentGatewayConfig c.getAll();
    // if system does not have the gateway, then insert it
   if(!mapOfConfigurationValues.containskey(gatewayName)) {
       insert listofConfiguration;
}
```

Mapping Gateway Response Codes to Salesforce Billing Gateway Statuses

Payment gateways have many response codes for payment operations. Salesforce Billing categorizes these codes into one of seven Gateway Status field values on your payment transaction record. The gateway status lets you know the result of a gateway call and whether you must correct anything. When you configure a payment gateway package, create metadata that maps your chosen gateway's response codes to one of the statuses.

First, let's look at the values for the payment transaction's Status field in Salesforce Billing. When your gateway integration sets Status to a value, Salesforce Billing attempts to perform the action listed in the Salesforce Billing Action column in the following table.

Response	Definition	Salesforce Billing Action
Success	The gateway call succeeded.	Attempt payment creation and allocation.
Decline	The gateway call failed, but it can still work if you try again. For example, the customer had insufficient funds or briefly lost their connection to the internet. This response is also known as a "soft decline."	Update the payment run's decline count. Create payment transaction with gateway status of Decline.
Validation Error	Customer payment data is incorrect, such a misspelling in the credit card address or incorrect CW.	Create a payment transaction with a gateway status of Validation Error.
Permanent Fail	The gateway call failed and won't work even if you try again. If you receive this response, don't make further payments using the related payment method.	Create a payment transaction with a gateway status of Permanent Fail.
Requires Review	The customer bank requires additional information before completing the payment.	Create a payment transaction with gateway status of Requires Review.
Indeterminate	The gateway didn't respond to the call. This response usually happens when Salesforce Billing times out waiting for the response. This response doesn't increase the payment run's failure count.	Lock the invoice from further payment runs. Create a payment transaction with a gateway status of Indeterminate. Allow users to autovoid or manually create a payment.
System Fail	Salesforce Billing ended the payment request call before receiving a response. For example, Salesforce Billing lost credentials or lost access to its server. This response increases the payment run's failure count. Salesforce Billing ends payment calls if it doesn't receive a response from the gateway in two minutes.	Create a payment transaction with a gateway status of System Fail. Allow users to autovoid or manually create a payment.

Response codes and descriptions vary between payment gateway providers. Let's look at a few examples and see how they can map to a gateway status.

Gateway	Code	Gateway's Description	Salesforce Billing Equivalent
Payeezy	100	"Approved"	Success
CyberSource	151	"The request was received, but a server timeout occurred. This error doesn't include timeouts	Indeterminate

Gateway	Code	Gateway's Description	Salesforce Billing Equivalent
		between the client and the server."	
		"To avoid duplicating the transaction, don't resend the request until you have reviewed the transaction status at the Business Center. See the documentation for your CyberSource client for more information."	
PayFlowPro	4	"Invalid amount format. Use the format '#####.##' Don't include currency symbols or commas."	System
AuthorizeDotNet	E00057	"The user doesn't have permissions to submit requests from a mobile device."	Fail

Configure Response Code Metadata in Your Payment Gateway Package

Payment gateway packages require a custom metadata type file to communicate with Salesforce Billing. The custom metadata type defines the custom object and fields that the gateway package uses to store request and response information sent from the payment gateway. Your custom metadata type file evaluates the value of your gateway package's custom gateway field. Then, the file must convert the gateway field to a value that Salesforce Billing sends to the payment transaction's Status field.

Configuring Salesforce Billing to Read Your Mapping Metadata

After you've set up your mapping metadata, configure your payment gateway adapter Apex class to read the gateway status and assign it to TransactionResult.

Configure Response Code Metadata in Your Payment Gateway Package

Payment gateway packages require a custom metadata type file to communicate with Salesforce Billing. The custom metadata type defines the custom object and fields that the gateway package uses to store request and response information sent from the payment gateway. Your custom metadata type file evaluates the value of your gateway package's custom gateway field. Then, the file must convert the gateway field to a value that Salesforce Billing sends to the payment transaction's Status field.

The fields used to store gateway request and response values vary between payment gateway packages. Let's look at a few examples from the custom metadata created for the AuthorizeDotNet, CyberSource, and Payeezy packages. In each, we provide a recommended metadata name.

Package	Metadata Name	API Names	Field Labels
AuthorizeDotNet	adholing Gateway, Status V Apping indi	Response from GatewayAdditional Gateway Response	 adhblng_ResponseCode_c adhblng_ResponseCode2_c adhblng_GatewayStatus_c

Package	Metadata Name	API Names	Field Labels
		Corresponding Gateway Status	
CyberSource	csoling GatewayStatusVapping not	Response from GatewayCorresponding GatewayStatus	csblng_ResponseCode_c csblng_GatewayStatus_c
Payeezy	pyzblog GatevayStatusVapping not	Response from GatewayCorresponding GatewayStatus	pyzblng_ResponseCode_c pyzblng_GatewayStatus_c

Example: Cybersource's response code 100 represents a successful communication with the payment gateway. Let's look at a metadata file that evaluates the Cybersource gateway package field ResponseCode__c for a value of 100 and then sets the payment transaction's status field to Success.

Example: Some payment gateways return multiple response codes for one gateway transaction. Responses with multiple codes can occur when the gateway processes the transaction successfully but then the customer card provider responds with another value. For example, the AuthorizeDotNet code *100001* indicates that the payment gateway successfully processed a request. However, the card provider can then send a response code of *3*, which indicates that the transaction was declined. The provider can also send a response code of *7*, which indicates that the credit card expiration date is invalid. Let's look at metadata samples for processing *100001* – *3* and *100001* – *7* respectively.

In this case, we assign I00001 - 3 to a Salesforce Billing value of Permanent Fail.

In this case, we assign I00001 - 7 to a Salesforce Billing value of Decline.

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<CustomMetadata xmlns="http://soap.sforce.com/2006/04/metadata"
xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema">
<label>I00001-2</label>
     <values>
        <field>ResponseCode c</field>
        <value xsi:type="xsd:string">I00001</value>
   </values>
    <values>
        <field>ResponseCode2__c</field>
        <value xsi:type="xsd:string">2</value>
   <values>
        <field>GatewayStatus c</field>
        <value xsi:type="xsd:string">Decline</value>
    </values>
</CustomMetadata>
```

Configuring Salesforce Billing to Read Your Mapping Metadata

After you've set up your mapping metadata, configure your payment gateway adapter Apex class to read the gateway status and assign it to TransactionResult.

First, define a GatewayStatusType enum.

```
// Get gatewayStatus
global GatewayStatusType getGatewayStatus()
{
   return gatewayStatus;
}
```

Next, add code that reads your GatewayStatusMapping metadata and sets the correct gateway status in your TransactionResult object. Here's one way you can configure it.

```
private static Map<string, blng.TransactionResult.GatewayStatusType>
mapGatewayStatusEnumTypesByStrings =
               new Map<string, blng.TransactionResult.GatewayStatusType>();
static {
   List<blr>blng.TransactionResult.GatewayStatusType> enumValues =
blng.TransactionResult.GatewayStatusType.values();
   for (Integer i = 0; i < enumValues.size(); i++) {</pre>
      mapGatewayStatusEnumTypesByStrings.put(enumValues.get(i).name(), enumValues.get(i));
   }
}
// default Gateway Status - It should be always Indeterminate to avoid duplicate payments
private static final blng.TransactionResult.GatewayStatusType defaultGatewayStatus =
blng.TransactionResult.GatewayStatusType.Indeterminate;
* Does a SOQL lookup on the mapper table and gets the gateway status mapped to the return
* Returns the default enum if no match is found
* @param transactionResult
public void populateGatewayStatus(blng.TransactionResult transactionResult) {
   blng.TransactionResult.GatewayStatusType gatewayStatus = defaultGatewayStatus;
   String returnCode = transactionResult.getResponseCode();
   if (returnCode != null) {
       List<GatewayStatusMapping mdt> gatewayStatusMaps = [
               SELECT GatewayStatus c
                FROM GatewayStatusMapping mdt
                WHERE ResponseCode c = :returnCode
                LIMIT 1
        ];
        if (!gatewayStatusMaps.isEmpty()) {
            gatewayStatus =
mapGatewayStatusEnumTypesByStrings.get(gatewayStatusMaps.get(0).GatewayStatus c);
            if (gatewayStatus == null) {
               gatewayStatus = defaultGatewayStatus;
        }
   transactionResult.setGatewayStatus(gatewayStatus);
}
```

Capture Externally Authorized Payments

Authorize payments in an external system, then capture the payment in Salesforce Billing using our Capture Transaction API methods. You can then use Salesforce Billing to manage the payment lifecycle and settle invoices.



Available in: Salesforce Billing Winter '21 and later

Delayed capture is useful when the payment is authorized at the time of sale and settled after an event occurs. For example, you can capture a payment after a subscription is provisioned or an item is delivered.



Important: Our Capture Payment API works out of the box with the Salesforce Billing Cybersource gateway integration package. Customers using other payment gateways must work with their payment gateway vendors to extend the gateway integration packages to the Capture Payment API.

Managing Payment Authorizations

Salesforce Billing doesn't process payment authorizations, but you can store information from an external authorization in a Salesforce Billing payment authorization record. To store external authorization information in Salesforce, add information from the external authorization to the following fields in the Salesforce Billing payment authorization record:

- Account ID
- Original Amount
- Currency ISO Code (for multi-currency orgs only)
- Payment Gateway ID
 - Use the ID of the Salesforce Billing payment gateway record that you use for storing payment capture information. The payment gateway record must have the same merchant credentials used to process the external payment authorization.
- Gateway Reference Number
 - The payment gateway supplies the reference number.
- Status this field must have the value Processed

Calling the Capture Transaction API

After you've created a payment authorization, you can pass it to the Capture Transaction API. To call the Capture Transaction API, add the following method to your PaymentGateway Apex class.

List<blng.OutputResult> result = blng.TransactionAPI.captureTransaction(lcip);

The CaptureTransaction API accepts information through the CaptureInputParameter class.

Table 2: CaptureInputParameter Parameters

Parameter	Description	Туре	Required
PaymentAuthorization	ID of the payment authorization record from Salesforce Billing.	ID	Yes
captureAmount	Amount of payment to capture from the payment.	Decimal	Yes
additionalParameters	If your capture request requires more information, you can provide a map of additional	Map <string, string=""></string,>	No

Parameter	Description	Туре	Required
	key-value pairs to the gateway adapter		

The CaptureOutputResult class returns the results of your capture request. If you successfully capture the payment, Salesforce Billing creates a posted payment record related to your payment authorization. The CaptureTransaction API also sends a capture success message. If the capture fails, the CaptureTransaction API sends a capture failure message.

Table 3: CaptureOutputResult Parameters

Parameter	Description
isSuccess	Shows whether the payment capture request succeeded.
paymentID	The Salesforce Billing payment record that the CaptureAPI created as a result of successfully capturing a payment from the gateway.
paymentTransactionID	The Salesforce Billing payment transaction record containing information about the gateway interaction for the capture request.
errorMessage	If the payment capture was unsuccessful, contains information about the error.

Permissions

To perform a capture transaction, users require access to the following fields.

Payment

Write access on the following fields:

- Account
- Amount
- Status
- Payment Authorization
- Payment Gateway
- Payment Transaction
- Payment Gateway ID

Payment Transaction

Write access on the following fields:

- Account
- Amount
- Type
- Source Transaction ID
- Gateway Request
- Gateway Response
- Payment Gateway
- Gateway Status

- Response
- Response Code
- Response Message
- Payment Gateway ID
- Gateway Date
- Status

Referenced Classes

- CaptureInputParameter on page 381
- InputParameter on page 386
- CaptureOutputResult on page 383
- OutputResult on page 387



Example:

Request

In this example, CaptureInputParameter receives the payment authorization record from Salesforce Billing, a payment capture amount of 4.23, and additional parameters. The parameters are stored in a list and sent to TransactionAPI, which performs the payment capture. CaptureOutputResult contains information about the capture.

```
String authId = 'alwxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx;
Map<String, Schema.SObjectField> fieldMap =
blng PaymentAuthorization c.sObjectType.getDescribe().fields.getMap();
Set<String> fieldNames = fieldMap.keySet();
SObject myrecord = Database.query('select ' +
String.join((Iterable<String>)fieldNames, ',') + ' from blng PaymentAuthorization c
Where Id = \''+authId+'\'');
Map<String, String> additionalParams = new Map<String, String>();
additionalParams.put('merchantReferenceCode','demoCapture');
blng.CaptureInputParameter cip = new blng.CaptureInputParameter();
cip.setPaymentAuthorization((blng PaymentAuthorization c)myrecord);
cip.setAmount(4.23);
cip.setAdditionalParameters(additionalParams);
List<blng.CaptureInputParameter> lcip = new List<blng.CaptureInputParameter>();
lcip.add(cip);
List<br/>Slng.CaptureOutputResult> result = blng.TransactionAPI.captureTransaction(lcip);
system.debug(result[0]);
```

Success Response

Following a successful payment capture, CaptureOutputResult returns a success response with the IDs of the payment transaction and payment created in Salesforce Billing.

Failure Response

Following a failed payment capture, CaptureOutputResult returns a failure response with an error message and the ID of the payment transaction created in Salesforce Billing. The payment transaction contains information about the failed gateway communication.

[CaptureOutputResult.errorMessage=Invalid data. c:authRequestID, CaptureOutputResult.isSuccess=false, paymentId=null, paymentTransactionId=a24xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx]

Merchant Credential Fields

Each payment gateway package installs merchant credential fields on the Salesforce Billing payment gateway object. You can use these fields to provide merchant information when making a transaction request to the payment gateway.

Table 4: AuthorizeDotNet Merchant Credential Fields

Attribute Name	API Name	Required	Туре
APILoginId	adnblngAPILoginIdc	No	Text
APITransactionKey	adnblngAPITransactionKeyc	No	Text
TestMode	adnblngTestModec	No	Checkbox

Table 5: CyberSource Merchant Credential Fields

Attribute Name	API Name	Required	Туре
Merchant ID	csblngMerchantldc	No	Text
Merchant Reference	csblngMerchantReferencec	No	Text
Test Mode	csblngTestModec	No	Checkbox
Transaction Security Key	csblngTransactionSecurityKeyc	No	Text

Table 6: Payeezy Merchant Credential Fields

Attribute Name	API Name	Required	Туре
APIKey	pzyblngAPIKeyc	No	Text
APILoginId	pyzblngAPILoginIdc	No	Text
APISecret	pyzblngAPISecretc	No	Text
APITransactionKey	pyzblngAPITransactionKeyc	No	Text
Enable User Identification	pyzblng_EnableUserIdentification_c	No	Checkbox
JSSecurityKey	pyzblngJSSecurityKeyc	No	Text
TestMode	pyzblngTestModec	No	Text
Token	pyzblngTokenc	No	Text

Attribute Name	API Name	Required	Туре
TransarmorToken	pyzblngTransarmorTokenc	No	Text

Required Gateway Classes

All payment gateway and payment method records require several fields to communicate with the payment gateway, regardless of the gateway type. Specific gateway types may also require additional fields.

EDITIONS

Available in: Salesforce Billing 7.0 and later

Payment Method Fields

Label	API Name
Payment Method Name	Name
Account	blngAccountc
Active	blngActivec
Auto Pay	blngAutoPayc
Bank Account Name	blngBankAccountNamec
Bank Account Number	blngBankAccountNumberc
Bank Account Type	blngBankAccountTypec
Bank Name	blngBankNamec
Bank Routing Code	blngBankRoutingCodec
Card BIN	blngCardBINc
Card CVV	blngCWc
Card Expiration Month	blngCardExpirationMonthc
Card Expiration Year	blngCardExpirationYearc
Card Last 4	blngCardLastFourc
Card Number	blngCardNumberc
Card Type	blngCardTypec
City	blngChequeNumberc
Company	blngBillingCityc
Country	blngBillingCompanyc
Email	blngBillingEmailc
Fax	blngBillingFaxc
First Name	blngBillingFirstNamec

Gateway Response	blngGatewayResponsec
Last Name	blngBillingLastNamec
Name on Card	blngNameoncardc
Nick Name	blngNickNamec
Payment Gateway	blngPaymentGatewayc
Payment Gateway Token	blngPaymentGatewayTokenc
Payment Type	blngPaymentTypec
Phone Number	blngBillingPhonec
Postal Code	blngBillingZipPostalc
State	blngBillingStateProvincec
Street Address 1	blngBillingStreetc
Street Address 2	blngStreetAddress2c

Payment Gateway Fields

Gateway integrations require the following payment gateway record fields regardless of gateway type. If you have a field required by a specific gateway such as Authorize. Net, make sure to add that field to your payment gateway record as well.

Label	API Name
Payment Gateway Name	Name
Active	blngActivec
Default	blngDefaultc
Gateway Type	blngGatewayTypec

Configure a Payment Gateway in Salesforce Billing

Configure Salesforce Billing to send data to your chosen payment gateway.

- **1.** Set up remote site settings.
 - **a.** From Setup, enter *Remote Site Settings*, and then select **Remote Site Settings**.
 - b. Click New Remote Site.
 - **c.** Add the domain production URL and domain sandbox URL for your gateway.

 We provide a list of URLs for our default-supported gateways, but you can add others based on your custom gateway's requirements.

Gateway	Production URL	Sandbox URL
Authorize.net	https://api.authorize.net	https://apitest.authorize.net



Available in: Salesforce Billing 7.0 and later

Gateway	Production URL	Sandbox URL
CyberSource	https://ics2wsa.ic3.com	https://icswstesta.ic3.com
Payeezy	https://api.payeezy.com	https://api-cert.payeezy.com

2. Set up custom settings.

- **a.** From Setup, enter *Custom Settings*, and then select **Custom Settings**.
- b. Click Payment Gateway Config, then click Manage.
- c. Click New.
- **d.** Enter a name for your payment gateway.

 Match this value to the name on your payment gateway record's Gateway Type field.
- e. Enter your gateway class name.

This value takes the form of PackagePrefix.APIClassName. We provide a list of class names for our default gateways, but you can add others based on your custom gateway's requirements.

Name	Gateway Class Name
AuthorizeDotNet	AuthorizeDotNetAPI
CyberSource	CyberSourceAPI
Payeezy	PayeezyAPI

3. Save your changes.

Payment Gateway Class Reference

Review the classes and methods available when working with payment gateways in Salesforce Billing.

CaptureInputParameter Class

Receives the payment authorization record, payment capture amount, and an optional list of additional parameters from Salesforce Billing.

CaptureOutputResult Class

Stores the results of the payment capture request.

Payment Gateway Core Classes

Your payment gateway references these classes to receive transaction information from Salesforce Billing. They can't be modified.

Custom Gateway Classes

Salesforce Billing provides three classes that users can customize to integrate with their chosen payment gateway.

CaptureInputParameter Class

Receives the payment authorization record, payment capture amount, and an optional list of additional parameters from Salesforce Billing.

Namespace

blng

Example

In this example, t CaptureInputParameter receives the payment authorization record from Salesforce Billing, a payment capture amount of 4.23, and additional parameters. The parameters are stored in a list and sent to the TransactionAPI class, which performs the payment capture. The CaptureOutputResult class contains the result of the capture.

```
blng.CaptureInputParameter cip = new blng.CaptureInputParameter();
cip.setPaymentAuthorization((blng__PaymentAuthorization__c)myrecord);
cip.setAmount(4.23);
cip.setAdditionalParameters(additionalParams);
List<blng.CaptureInputParameter> lcip = new List<blng.CaptureInputParameter>();
lcip.add(cip);
List<blng.CaptureOutputResult> result = blng.TransactionAPI.captureTransaction(lcip);
system.debug(result[0]);
```

CaptureInputParameter Methods

CaptureInputParameter Methods

The following are methods for CaptureInputParameter.

```
setPaymentAuthorization(paymentAuthorization)
```

Sets the ID of the payment authorization.

getPaymentAuthorization()

Returns the payment authorization record from Salesforce Billing.

setAmount(amount)

Sets the amount of the payment capture.

getAmount()

Returns the amount of the payment capture to be performed.

setPaymentAuthorization(paymentAuthorization)

Sets the ID of the payment authorization.

```
Signature
```

```
global static void setPaymentAuthorization(blng__PaymentAuthorization__c
paymentAuthorization)
```

```
Parameters
paymentAuthorization
   Type: blng__PaymentAuthorization__c
   The payment authorization record from Salesforce Billing.
Return Value
Type: void
getPaymentAuthorization()
Returns the payment authorization record from Salesforce Billing.
Signature
global static blng PaymentAuthorization c getPaymentAuthorization()
Return Value
Type: blng___PaymentAuthorization___c
setAmount(amount)
Sets the amount of the payment capture.
Signature
global static void setAmount(Decimal amount)
Parameters
amount
   Type: Decimal
   The amount of the payment capture. Can be none, part, or all of the payment.
Return Value
Type: void
getAmount()
Returns the amount of the payment capture to be performed.
Signature
global static Decimal getAmount()
Return Value
Type: Decimal
```

CaptureOutputResult Class

Stores the results of the payment capture request.

Namespace

blng

Example



Example:

Request

In this example, CaptureInputParameter receives the payment authorization record from Salesforce Billing, a payment capture amount of 4.23, and additional parameters. The parameters are stored in a list and sent to TransactionAPI, which performs the payment capture. CaptureOutputResult contains information about the capture.

```
String authId = 'alwxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx;;
Map<String, Schema.SObjectField> fieldMap =
blng PaymentAuthorization c.sObjectType.getDescribe().fields.getMap();
Set<String> fieldNames = fieldMap.keySet();
SObject myrecord = Database.query('select ' +
String.join((Iterable<String>)fieldNames, ',') + ' from blng_PaymentAuthorization_c
Where Id = \''+authId+'\'');
Map<String, String> additionalParams = new Map<String, String>();
additionalParams.put('merchantReferenceCode','demoCapture');
blng.CaptureInputParameter cip = new blng.CaptureInputParameter();
cip.setPaymentAuthorization((blng PaymentAuthorization c)myrecord);
cip.setAmount(4.23);
cip.setAdditionalParameters(additionalParams);
List<blng.CaptureInputParameter> lcip = new List<blng.CaptureInputParameter>();
lcip.add(cip);
List<blnq.CaptureOutputResult> result = blnq.TransactionAPI.captureTransaction(lcip);
system.debug(result[0]);
```

Success Response

Following a successful payment capture, CaptureOutputResult returns a success response with the IDs of the payment transaction and payment created in Salesforce Billing.

```
[CaptureOutputResult.errorMessage=null, CaptureOutputResult.isSuccess=true,
```

Failure Response

Following a failed payment capture, CaptureOutputResult returns a failure response with an error message and the ID of the payment transaction created in Salesforce Billing. The payment transaction contains information about the failed gateway communication.

```
[CaptureOutputResult.errorMessage=Invalid data. c:authRequestID,
CaptureOutputResult.isSuccess=false, paymentId=null,
```

CaptureOutputResult Methods

CaptureOutputResult Methods

The following are methods for CaptureOutputResult.

setPaymentId(paymentId)

Sets the ID of the Salesforce Billing payment record created after a successful capture transaction.

getPaymentId()

Returns the ID of the Salesforce Billing payment record that was created after a successful capture transaction.

setPaymentTransactionId(paymentTransactionId)

Sets the ID of the Salesforce Billing payment transaction record that was created after a successful capture transaction.

getPaymentTransactionId()

Returns the ID of the Salesforce Billing payment transaction record created after a successful capture transaction.

setPaymentId(paymentId)

Sets the ID of the Salesforce Billing payment record created after a successful capture transaction.

Signature

```
global static void setPaymentId(Id paymentId)
```

Parameters

paymentId

Type: Id

ID of the payment record created in Salesforce Billing. The payment record stores information about the payment.

Return Value

Type: void

getPaymentId()

Returns the ID of the Salesforce Billing payment record that was created after a successful capture transaction.

Signature

```
global static Id getPaymentId()
```

Return Value

Type: Id

setPaymentTransactionId(paymentTransactionId)

Sets the ID of the Salesforce Billing payment transaction record that was created after a successful capture transaction.

Signature

public static void setPaymentTransactionId(Id paymentTransactionId)

Parameters

paymentTransactionId

Type: Id

ID of the payment transaction record created in Salesforce Billing. This record stores the results of the communication with the payment gateway.

Return Value

Type: void

getPaymentTransactionId()

Returns the ID of the Salesforce Billing payment transaction record created after a successful capture transaction.

Signature

```
global static Id getPaymentTransactionId()
```

Return Value

Type: Id

Payment Gateway Core Classes

Your payment gateway references these classes to receive transaction information from Salesforce Billing. They can't be modified.

The following are the blng namespace classes required for payment gateway integration.

InputParameter Class

Captures and retrieves additional parameters to be sent during the capture payment transaction.

OutputResult Class

Stores and shows the results of the capture payment request made to the payment gateway.

PaymentGateway Interface

Interface for standard payment transaction operations such as voids and refunds.

PaymentGateways Interface

Interface with common payment gateway operation across all gateways.

PaymentGatewayParameter Class

Global parameter class for the payment gateway.

PaymentGatewayStatus Interface

Interface to populate the TransactionResult value object from the gateway response.

TransactionAPI Class

The Transaction API class includes global methods for several payment features.

TransactionParameter Class

Acts as a container to store calculation-specific information.

TransactionResult Class

Holds the result of the transaction.

TransactionResult.GatewayStatusType Enum

An enum defining the appropriate gateway status values returned by the payment gateway.

InputParameter Class

Captures and retrieves additional parameters to be sent during the capture payment transaction.

Namespace

blng

InputParameter Methods

InputParameter Methods

The following are methods for InputParameter.

setAdditionalParameters(additionalParams)

Creates a map of any additional parameters that the user sent with the payment capture request. This method and its parameters are optional.

getAdditionalParameters()

Returns additional parameters sent during the capture payment request.

setAdditionalParameters(additionalParams)

Creates a map of any additional parameters that the user sent with the payment capture request. This method and its parameters are optional.

Signature

```
global static void setAdditionalParameters(Map<String,String> additionalParams)
```

Parameters

```
additionalParams
Type: Map<String,String>
```

Return Value

Type: void

getAdditionalParameters()

Returns additional parameters sent during the capture payment request.

Signature

```
global static Map<string, string> getAdditionalParameters()
```

Return Value

Type: Map<String, String>

OutputResult Class

Stores and shows the results of the capture payment request made to the payment gateway.

Namespace

blng

OutputResult Methods

OutputResult Methods

The following are methods for OutputResult.

setIsSuccess(isSuccess)

Sets the results of the capture request gateway communication as either truetrue (successful) or falsefalse (failed).

isSuccess(isSuccess)

Shows whether the capture payment request was successful in the payment gateway.

setErrorMessage(errorMessage)

Sets the error message following a failed payment capture request made to the payment gateway.

getErrorMessage()

Returns the error message that the payment gateway sent following a failed capture payment request.

setIsSuccess(isSuccess)

Sets the results of the capture request gateway communication as either truetrue (successful) or falsefalse (failed).

Signature

```
global static void setIsSuccess(boolean isSuccess)
```

Parameters

isSuccess

Type: boolean

Return Value

Type: Void

isSuccess (isSuccess)

Shows whether the capture payment request was successful in the payment gateway.

Signature

global static Boolean isSuccess

Return Value

Type: Boolean

setErrorMessage(errorMessage)

Sets the error message following a failed payment capture request made to the payment gateway.

Signature

```
global static void setErrorMessage(String errorMessage)
```

Parameters

errorMessage

Type: String

Error message containing information about the failed gateway communication. For information about the error message, see the documentation for your gateway.

Return Value

Type: void

getErrorMessage()

Returns the error message that the payment gateway sent following a failed capture payment request.

Signature

```
global static String getErrorMessage()
```

Return Value

Type: String

PaymentGateway Interface

Interface for standard payment transaction operations such as voids and refunds.

Namespace

blng

Usage

A gateway implementor uses logic such as paymentGatewayParameter.getTransactionType() == "generateToken" and calls underlying payment transaction functions. Similar logic applies for voids, refunds, and other actions.

PaymentGateway Methods

PaymentGateway Example Implementation

PaymentGateway Methods

The following are methods for PaymentGateway.

generateToken(mapOfTransactionParameterByld)

Generates a token for a payment method.

charge Transaction (map Of Transaction Parameter Byld)

Authorize and capture a credit card payment and ACH payment.

void Transaction (map Of Transaction Parameter Byld)

The Void transaction type can cancel either an original transaction or a transaction that hasn't been settled.

authorize Transaction (map Of Transaction Parameter Byld)

Authorizes a credit card payment. To perform a charge transaction, the user must follow the authorization with a capture transaction.

refund Transaction (map Of Transaction Parameter Byld)

Refund a customer for a transaction that wsa successfully settled through the payment gateway.

generateToken(mapOfTransactionParameterById)

Generates a token for a payment method.

Signature

global Map<String, TransactionResult> generateToken(Map<String, TransactionParameter>
mapOfTransactionParameterById)

Parameters

mapOfTransactionParameterById

Type: Map<String, TransactionParameter>

Map of parameter is based on the payment gateway.

Return Value

Type: Map<String, TransactionResult>

List of Transaction Results : List<TransactionResult>

chargeTransaction(mapOfTransactionParameterById)

Authorize and capture a credit card payment and ACH payment.

Signature

global Map<String, TransactionResult> chargeTransaction(Map<String, TransactionParameter>
mapOfTransactionParameterById)

Parameters

mapOfTransactionParameterById
Type: Map<String, TransactionParameter>
Map of parameter is based on the payment gateway.

Return Value

Type: Map<String, TransactionResult>

List of Transaction Results: List<TransactionResult>

voidTransaction(mapOfTransactionParameterById)

The Void transaction type can cancel either an original transaction or a transaction that hasn't been settled.

Signature

global Map<String, TransactionResult> voidTransaction(Map<String, TransactionParameter>
mapOfTransactionParameterById)

Parameters

mapOfTransactionParameterById
Type: Map<String, TransactionParameter>
Parameter map is based on the payment gateway.

Return Value

Type: Map<String, TransactionResult>

List of Transaction Results : List<TransactionResult>

authorizeTransaction(mapOfTransactionParameterById)

Authorizes a credit card payment. To perform a charge transaction, the user must follow the authorization with a capture transaction.

Signature

global Map<String, TransactionResult> authorizeTransaction(Map<String, TransactionParameter> mapOfTransactionParameterById)

Parameters

mapOfTransactionParameterById
Type: Map<String, TransactionParameter>
Map of parameter is based on the payment gateway.

Return Value

Type: Map<String, TransactionResult>

List of Transaction Results: List<TransactionResult>

refundTransaction(mapOfTransactionParameterById)

Refund a customer for a transaction that wsa successfully settled through the payment gateway.

Signature

public Map<String, TransactionResult> refundTransaction(Map<String, TransactionParameter>
mapOfTransactionParameterById)

Parameters

 ${\it mapOfTransactionParameterById}$

Type: Map<String, TransactionParameter>

Map of parameter is based on the payment gateway.

Return Value

Type: Map<String, TransactionResult>

List of Transaction Results: List<TransactionResult>

PaymentGateway Example Implementation

The YourGatewayAPI class implements the PaymentGateway, PaymentGateways, and PaymentGatewayStatus interfaces.

PaymentGateways Interface

Interface with common payment gateway operation across all gateways.

Namespace

blng

Usage

Test.

PaymentGateways Methods

PaymentGateways Example Implementation

PaymentGateways Methods

The following are methods for PaymentGateways.

processPayments(mapOfTransactionParameterByld, paymentGatewayParameter) Generates a token.

processPayments (mapOfTransactionParameterById, paymentGatewayParameter)

Generates a token.

Signature

global Map<String, TransactionResult> processPayments(Map<String, TransactionParameter>
mapOfTransactionParameterById, PaymentGatewayParameter paymentGatewayParameter)

Parameters

mapOfTransactionParameterById
 Type: Map<String, TransactionParameter>
paymentGatewayParameter
 Type: PaymentGatewayParameter

Return Value

Type: Map<String, TransactionResult>

PaymentGateways Example Implementation

The YourGatewayAPI class implements the PaymentGateway, PaymentGateways, and PaymentGatewayStatus interfaces.

PaymentGatewayParameter Class

Global parameter class for the payment gateway.

Namespace

blng

PaymentGatewayParameter Methods

PaymentGatewayParameter Methods

The following are methods for PaymentGatewayParameter.

setTransactionType(transactionType)
Sets TransactionType.
getTransactionType()
Gets TransactionType.

setTransactionType(transactionType)

Sets TransactionType.

global void setTransactionType(String transactionType)

Parameters

transactionType
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

getTransactionType()

Gets TransactionType.

Signature

global String getTransactionType()

Return Value

Type: String

PaymentGatewayStatus Interface

Interface to populate the TransactionResult value object from the gateway response.

Namespace

blng

Usage

This method takes in the transaction result object and defines its attributes.

PaymentGatewayStatus Methods

PaymentGatewayStatus Example Implementation

PaymentGatewayStatus Methods

The following are methods for PaymentGatewayStatus.

PopulateGatewayStatus(transactionResult)

Populates the GatewayStatus enum on the TransactionResult, given return codes that are already set in the TransactionResults.

PopulateGatewayStatus(transactionResult)

Populates the GatewayStatus enum on the TransactionResult, given return codes that are already set in the TransactionResults.

global void PopulateGatewayStatus(TransactionResult transationResult)

Parameters

transationResult
 Type: TransactionResult

Return Value

Type: Void

PaymentGatewayStatus Example Implementation

The YourGatewayAPI class implements the PaymentGateway, PaymentGateways, and PaymentGatewayStatus interfaces.

TransactionAPI Class

The Transaction API class includes global methods for several payment features.

Namespace

blng

TransactionAPI Methods

TransactionAPI Methods

The following are methods for TransactionAPI.

generateToken(mapOfTransactionParameterByld)

Generates a token for a payment method.

authorize Transaction (map Of Transaction Parameter Byld)

Authorizes a credit card payment. To perform a charge transaction, the user must follow the authorization with a capture transaction.

capture Transaction (map Of Transaction Parameter Byld)

Captures a payment for an authorize transaction.

captureTransaction(captureInputParameters)

Captures a payment for an authorization transaction using input parameters.

chargeTransaction(mapOfTransactionParameterByld)

Authorize and capture a credit card payment or ACH payment.

getPaymentStatus(mapOfTransactionParameterById)

Gets the status of a payment transaction.

void Transaction (map Of Transaction Parameter Byld)

Cancels an original transaction that hasn't been settled.

refundTransaction(mapOfTransactionParameterByld)

Refunds a customer for a transaction that has been successfully settled through the payment gateway.

nonReferredRefund (mapOfTransactionParameterByld)

Performs a non-referred refund of a credit card payment or an ACH payment.

voidRefundTransaction(mapOfTransactionParameterByld)

Voids an unsettled refund transaction from a credit card payment or ACH payment.

getRefundStatus(mapOfTransactionParameterByld)

Gets the status of a refund transaction.

voidTokenTransaction(mapOfTransactionParameterByld)

Voids a credit card token.

refundPayment(listofRefundParameters)

Refunds a payment.

resetInvoiceCorrectiveAction(invoices)

Unlocks an invoice

validateRefundTransactionId(transactionId)

Validates whether a payment transaction can be refunded.

authorizeTransaction(invoiceID)

Authorizes a payment for an invoice.

chargeTransaction(invoiceID)

Authorizes a payment for an invoice.

generateToken(mapOfTransactionParameterById)

Generates a token for a payment method.

Signature

global static List<TransactionResult> generateToken(Map<String, TransactionParameter>
mapOfTransactionParameterById)

Parameters

mapOfTransactionParameterById

Type: Map<String, TransactionParameter>

Parameter map is based on the payment gateway.

Return Value

Type: List<TransactionResult>

List of Transaction Results: List<TransactionResult>

authorizeTransaction(mapOfTransactionParameterById)

Authorizes a credit card payment. To perform a charge transaction, the user must follow the authorization with a capture transaction.

public static List<TransactionResult> authorizeTransaction(Map<String, TransactionParameter> mapOfTransactionParameterById)

Parameters

mapOfTransactionParameterById
Type: Map<String, TransactionParameter>
Parameter map is based on the payment gateway.

Return Value

Type: List<TransactionResult>

List of Transaction Results: List<TransactionResult>

captureTransaction(mapOfTransactionParameterById)

Captures a payment for an authorize transaction.

Signature

global static List<TransactionResult> captureTransaction(Map<String,
TransactionParameter> mapOfTransactionParameterById)

Parameters

mapOfTransactionParameterById
Type: Map<String, TransactionParameter>
Parameter map is based on the payment gateway.

Return Value

Type: List<TransactionResult>

List of Transaction Results : List<TransactionResult>

captureTransaction(captureInputParameters)

Captures a payment for an authorization transaction using input parameters.

Signature

global static List<CaptureOutputResult> captureTransaction(List<CaptureInputParameter>
captureInputParameters)

blng.TransactionAPI, captureTransaction, [List<CaptureInputParameter>],
List<CaptureOutputResult>

captureInputParameters

Type: List<CaptureInputParameter>

A list of input parameters passed from the CaptureInputParameter class.

Return Value

Type: List < Capture Output Result on page 383>

chargeTransaction(mapOfTransactionParameterById)

Authorize and capture a credit card payment or ACH payment.

Signature

public static List<TransactionResult> chargeTransaction(Map<String, TransactionParameter>
mapOfTransactionParameterById)

Parameters

mapOfTransactionParameterById

Type: Map<String, TransactionParameter>

Parameter map is based on the payment gateway.

Return Value

Type: List<TransactionResult>

List of Transaction Results : List<TransactionResult>

getPaymentStatus(mapOfTransactionParameterById)

Gets the status of a payment transaction.

Signature

global static List<TransactionResult> getPaymentStatus(Map<String, TransactionParameter>
mapOfTransactionParameterById)

Parameters

mapOfTransactionParameterById

Type: Map<String, TransactionParameter>

Parameter map is based on the payment gateway.

Return Value

Type: List<TransactionResult>

List of Transaction Results : List<TransactionResult>

voidTransaction(mapOfTransactionParameterById)

Cancels an original transaction that hasn't been settled.

Signature

global static List<TransactionResult> voidTransaction(Map<String, TransactionParameter>
mapOfTransactionParameterById)

Parameters

mapOfTransactionParameterById
 Type: Map<String, TransactionParameter>

Parameter map is based on the payment gateway.

Return Value

Type: List<TransactionResult>

List of Transaction Results: List<TransactionResult>

refundTransaction(mapOfTransactionParameterById)

Refunds a customer for a transaction that has been successfully settled through the payment gateway.

Signature

global static List<TransactionResult> refundTransaction(Map<String, TransactionParameter>
mapOfTransactionParameterById)

Parameters

mapOfTransactionParameterById

Type: Map<String, TransactionParameter>

Parameter map is based on the payment gateway.

Return Value

Type: List<TransactionResult>

List of Transaction Results: List<TransactionResult>

nonReferredRefund(mapOfTransactionParameterById)

Performs a non-referred refund of a credit card payment or an ACH payment.

Signature

global static List<TransactionResult> nonReferredRefund(Map<String, TransactionParameter>
mapOfTransactionParameterById)

 ${\it mapOfTransactionParameterById}$

Type: Map<String, TransactionParameter>

Parameter map is based on the payment gateway.

Return Value

Type: List<TransactionResult>

List of Transaction Results: List<TransactionResult>

voidRefundTransaction(mapOfTransactionParameterById)

Voids an unsettled refund transaction from a credit card payment or ACH payment.

Signature

global static List<TransactionResult> voidRefundTransaction(Map<String,
TransactionParameter> mapOfTransactionParameterById)

Parameters

 ${\it mapOfTransactionParameterById}$

Type: Map<String, TransactionParameter>

Parameter map is based on the payment gateway.

Return Value

Type: List<TransactionResult>

List of Transaction Results: List<TransactionResult>

getRefundStatus(mapOfTransactionParameterById)

Gets the status of a refund transaction.

Signature

global static List<TransactionResult> getRefundStatus(Map<String, TransactionParameter>
mapOfTransactionParameterById)

Parameters

mapOfTransactionParameterById

Type: Map<String, TransactionParameter>

Parameter map is based on the payment gateway.

Return Value

Type: List<TransactionResult>

List of Transaction Results: List<TransactionResult>

voidTokenTransaction(mapOfTransactionParameterById)

Voids a credit card token.

Signature

global static List<TransactionResult> voidTokenTransaction(Map<String,
TransactionParameter> mapOfTransactionParameterById)

Parameters

 ${\it mapOfTransactionParameterById}$

Type: Map<String, TransactionParameter>

Parameter map is based on the payment gateway.

Return Value

Type: List<TransactionResult>

List of Transaction Results: List<TransactionResult>

refundPayment(listofRefundParameters)

Refunds a payment.

Signature

global static List<TransactionResult> refundPayment(List<RefundParameter>
listofRefundParameters)

Parameters

listofRefundParameters

Type: List<RefundParameter>

Parameter map is based on the payment gateway.

Return Value

Type: List<TransactionResult>

List of Transaction Results: List<TransactionResult>

resetInvoiceCorrectiveAction(invoices)

Unlocks an invoice.

Signature

global static Boolean resetInvoiceCorrectiveAction(List<Invoice c> invoices)

invoices

Type: List<Invoice__c>

List of invoices to unlock due to payment issues.

Return Value

Type: Boolean

Returns True if invoice update is succesful, otherwise returns False.

validateRefundTransactionId(transactionId)

Validates whether a payment transaction can be refunded.

Signature

global static String validateRefundTransactionId(Id transactionId)

Parameters

transactionId

Type: Id

Single transactionId passed to validate whether a refund is allowed.

Return Value

Type: String

Returns String values such as the following.

- PAYMENT_TRANSACTION_NO_GATEWAY_ID_MESSAGE Cannot refund payment transactions without gateway IDs. The invoice has been unlocked.
- INVALID_PAYMENT_TRANSACTION_FOR_REFUND_MESSAGE Cannot refund payment transaction. This transaction is not currently eligible for refunding.
- ALLOW_REFUND_TRANSACTION True
- REFUND_INVALID_PAYMENT_TRANSACTION_MESSAGE_ALOHA- Cannot refund invalid transactions or transactions without invoices.

authorizeTransaction(invoiceID)

Authorizes a payment for an invoice.

Signature

global static TransactionResult authorizeTransaction(Id invoiceID)

Parameters

invoiceID

Type: Id

Return Value

Type: TransactionResult

chargeTransaction(invoiceID)

Authorizes a payment for an invoice.

Signature

global static TransactionResult chargeTransaction(Id invoiceID)

Parameters

invoiceID Type: ld

Return Value

Type: TransactionResult

TransactionParameter Class

Acts as a container to store calculation-specific information.

Namespace

blng

TransactionParameter Methods

TransactionParameter Methods

The following are methods for TransactionParameter.

setRequestingInvoiceId(requestingInvoiceId)

Sets RequestingInvoiceld.

getRequestingInvoiceId()

Gets Requesting Invoiceld.

setCardCodeResponse(cardCodeResponse)

Sets cardCodeResponse.

getCardCodeResponse()

Gets cardCodeResponse.

setCardNumber(requestingCreditCardNumber)

Sets requestingCreditCardNumber.

getCardNumber()

Gets requestingCreditCardNumber.

setPayment(paymentInstance)

Sets payment details like merchantRefld, RequestCreditCardNumber__c, CardCodeResponse__c, GatewayID__c. Also sets payment method details for PaymentType__c, CardExpirationYear__c, CardExpirationMonth__c, BankName__c, BankAccountType__c, BankAccountNumber__c, BankAccountNumber__c, CardType__c, BankRoutingCode__c if they aren't already set.

getPayment()

Gets Payment.

getMerchantId()

Gets merchantRefld.

setMerchantId()

Sets Merchantld.

getGatewayld()

Gets Gateway ID.

getResponseValueByKey()

Gets ResponseValueByKey

setGateway(gateway)

Sets Gateway ID.

setPaymentMethod(paymentMethod)

Sets PaymentMethod.

getPaymentMethod()

Gets PaymentMethod.

setInvoice(invoice)

Sets invoice.

getInvoice()

Gets Invoice.

setInputParameter(inputParameter)

Sets the input parameters for a payment capture transaction.

getInputParameter()

Returns the input parameters sent from the inputParameter class.

setInvoiceLine(line)

Sets listOfInvoiceLine.

getInvoiceLine()

Gets listOfInvoiceLine.

setTransaction(transactionInstance)

Sets transaction instance and details like merchantRefld, RequestCreditCardNumber, ResponseCode, and GatewayID.

getTransaction()

Gets Transaction.

setAccount(accountInstance)

Sets Account.

getAccount()

Gets Account.

setRequestBody(requestBody) Sets RequestBody.

getRequestBody()
Gets RequestBody.

set First Name (first Name)

Sets FirstName.

getFirstName()

Gets FirstName.

setLastName(lastName)

Sets LastName.

getLastName()

Gets LastName.

setEmailId(emailId)

Sets Emailld.

getEmailId()

Gets Emailld.

setStreet(street)

Sets street.

getStreet()

Gets Street.

setCity(city)

Sets City.

getCity()

Gets City.

setState(state)

Sets state.

getState()

Gets State.

setZipCode(zipCode)

Sets zip code.

getZipCode()

Gets ZipCode.

setCountry(country)

Sets Country.

getCountry()

Gets Country.

setPhone(phone)

Sets phone.

getPhone()

Gets Phone.

```
setCurrencyld(currencyld)
   Sets Currency Id.
   getCurrencyld()
   Gets Currency Id.
   setAmount(amount)
   Sets amount.
   getAmount()
   Gets Amount.
setRequestingInvoiceId(requestingInvoiceId)
Sets RequestingInvoiceld.
Signature
global void setRequestingInvoiceId(Id requestingInvoiceId)
Parameters
requestingInvoiceId
   Type: Id
Return Value
Type: void
getRequestingInvoiceId()
Gets Requesting Invoiceld.
Signature
global Id getRequestingInvoiceId()
Return Value
Type: Id
setCardCodeResponse(cardCodeResponse)
Sets cardCodeResponse.
Signature
global void setCardCodeResponse(String cardCodeResponse)
```

cardCodeResponse
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

getCardCodeResponse()

Gets cardCodeResponse.

Signature

global String getCardCodeResponse()

Return Value

Type: String

setCardNumber(requestingCreditCardNumber)

Sets requestingCreditCardNumber.

Signature

global void setCardNumber(String requestingCreditCardNumber)

Parameters

 $\label{thm:condition} requesting \textit{CreditCardNumber} \\ \textit{Type: String}$

Return Value

Type: void

getCardNumber()

 $Gets\ requesting Credit Card Number.$

Signature

global String getCardNumber()

Return Value

Type: String

setPayment(paymentInstance)

Sets payment details like merchantRefld, RequestCreditCardNumber__c, CardCodeResponse__c, GatewayID__c. Also sets payment method details for PaymentType__c, CardExpirationYear__c, CardExpirationMonth__c, BankName__c, BankAccountType__c, BankAccountName__c, CardType__c, BankRoutingCode__c if they aren't already set.

Signature

```
global void setPayment(Payment c paymentInstance)
```

Parameters

```
paymentInstance
Type: Payment__c
```

Return Value

Type: void

getPayment()

Gets Payment.

Signature

```
global Payment c getPayment()
```

Return Value

Type: Payment__c

getMerchantId()

Gets merchantRefld.

Signature

```
global String getMerchantId()
```

Return Value

Type: String

setMerchantId()

Sets Merchantld.

Signature

```
global String setMerchantId()
```

Return Value

Type: String

getGatewayId()

Gets Gateway ID.

Signature

global String getGatewayId()

Return Value

Type: String

getResponseValueByKey()

Gets ResponseValueByKey

Signature

global Map<String, String> getResponseValueByKey()

Return Value

Type: Map<String, String>

setGateway(gateway)

Sets Gateway ID.

Signature

global void setGateway(PaymentGateway c gateway)

Parameters

gateway

Type: PaymentGateway___c

Return Value

Type: void

setPaymentMethod(paymentMethod)

Sets PaymentMethod.

Signature

global void setPaymentMethod(PaymentMethod c paymentMethod)

paymentMethod
 Type: PaymentMethod__c

Return Value

Type: void

getPaymentMethod()

Gets PaymentMethod.

Signature

```
global PaymentMethod c getPaymentMethod()
```

Return Value

Type: PaymentMethod__c

setInvoice(invoice)

Sets invoice.

Signature

```
global void setInvoice(Invoice c invoice)
```

Parameters

```
invoice
Type: Invoice__c
```

Return Value

Type: void

getInvoice()

Gets Invoice.

Signature

```
global Invoice__c getInvoice()
```

Return Value

Type: Invoice__c

setInputParameter(inputParameter)

Sets the input parameters for a payment capture transaction.

Signature

global void setInputParameter(InputParameter inputParameter)

Parameters

inputParameter
Type: InputParameter

Return Value

Type: void

getInputParameter()

Returns the input parameters sent from the inputParameter class.

Signature

```
global InputParameter getInputParameter()
```

Return Value

Type: InputParameter

setInvoiceLine(line)

Sets listOflnvoiceLine.

Signature

```
global void setInvoiceLine(InvoiceLine c line)
```

Parameters

line

Type: InvoiceLine__c

Return Value

Type: void

getInvoiceLine()

Gets listOflnvoiceLine.

```
global List<InvoiceLine c> getInvoiceLine()
```

Return Value

Type: List<InvoiceLine__c>

setTransaction(transactionInstance)

Sets transaction instance and details like merchantRefld, RequestCreditCardNumber, ResponseCode, and GatewayID.

Signature

```
global void setTransaction(PaymentTransaction__c transactionInstance)
```

Parameters

```
transactionInstance
    Type: PaymentTransaction__c
```

Return Value

Type: void

getTransaction()

Gets Transaction.

Signature

```
global PaymentTransaction c getTransaction()
```

Return Value

Type: PaymentTransaction___c

setAccount(accountInstance)

Sets Account.

Signature

```
global void setAccount(Account accountInstance)
```

Parameters

```
accountInstance
Type: Account
```

Return Value Type: void getAccount() Gets Account. **Signature** global Account getAccount() **Return Value** Type: Account setRequestBody (requestBody) Sets RequestBody. **Signature** global void setRequestBody(String requestBody) **Parameters** requestBody Type: String **Return Value** Type: void getRequestBody() Gets RequestBody. Signature global String getRequestBody() **Return Value** Type: String setFirstName(firstName) Sets FirstName. Signature

global void setFirstName(String firstName)

firstName
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

getFirstName()

Gets FirstName.

Signature

global String getFirstName()

Return Value

Type: String

setLastName(lastName)

Sets LastName.

Signature

global void setLastName(String lastName)

Parameters

lastName
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

getLastName()

Gets LastName.

Signature

global String getLastName()

Return Value

Type: String

```
setEmailId(emailId)
Sets Emailld.
Signature
global void setEmailId(String emailId)
Parameters
emailId
   Type: String
Return Value
Type: void
getEmailId()
Gets Emailld.
Signature
global String getEmailId()
Return Value
Type: String
setStreet(street)
Sets street.
Signature
global void setStreet(String street)
Parameters
street
   Type: String
Return Value
Type: void
getStreet()
```

Gets Street.

```
global String getStreet()
```

Return Value

Type: String

setCity(city)

Sets City.

Signature

global void setCity(String city)

Parameters

city

Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

getCity()

Gets City.

Signature

```
global String getCity()
```

Return Value

Type: String

setState(state)

Sets state.

Signature

global void setState(String state)

Parameters

state

Type: String

Return Value Type: void getState() Gets State. **Signature** global String getState() **Return Value** Type: String setZipCode(zipCode) Sets zip code. **Signature** global void setZipCode(String zipCode) **Parameters** zipCode Type: String **Return Value** Type: void getZipCode() Gets ZipCode. **Signature** global String getZipCode() **Return Value** Type: String setCountry(country) Sets Country. **Signature** global void setCountry(String country)

country
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

getCountry()

Gets Country.

Signature

global String getCountry()

Return Value

Type: String

setPhone (phone)

Sets phone.

Signature

global void setPhone(String phone)

Parameters

phone
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

getPhone()

Gets Phone.

Signature

global String getPhone()

Return Value

Type: String

setCurrencyId(currencyId) Sets Currency Id. **Signature** global void setCurrencyId(String currencyId) **Parameters** currencyId Type: String **Return Value** Type: void getCurrencyId() Gets Currency Id. Signature global String getCurrencyId() **Return Value** Type: String setAmount(amount) Sets amount. **Signature** global void setAmount(String amount) **Parameters** amount

Type: String

Return ValueType: void

getAmount()
Gets Amount.

```
global String getAmount()
```

Return Value

Type: String

TransactionResult Class

Holds the result of the transaction.

Namespace

blng

TransactionResult Methods

TransactionResult Methods

The following are methods for TransactionResult.

```
setResponseCodeMessage(responseCodeMessage)
```

Sets ResponseCodeMessage.

getResponseCodeMessage()

Gets ResponseCodeMessage.

setCardCodeResponse(cardCodeResponse)

Sets CardCodeResponse.

getCardCodeResponse()

Gets CardCodeResponse.

setCustomerProfileToken(customerProfileToken)

Sets customerProfileToken.

getCustomerProfileToken()

Gets CustomerProfileToken.

setPaymentToken(paymentToken)

Sets PaymentToken.

getPaymentToken()

Gets PaymentToken.

set Response Status (response Status)

Sets ResponseStatus.

getResponseStatus()

Gets ResponseStatus.

setGatewayRequest(gatewayRequest)

Sets the capture payment request sent to the payment gateway.

getGatewayRequest(gatewayRequest)

Returns the string containing the payment capture request sent to the gateway.

setGatewayResponse(gatewayResponse)

Returns the gateway's response following a capture payment transaction.

getGatewayResponse(gatewayResponse)

Returns the string containing the gateway's response from a capture payment transaction.

setResponseMessage(responseMessage)

Sets ResponseMessage.

getResponseMessage()

Gets ResponseMessage.

setResponseCode(responseCode)

Sets ResponseCode.

getResponseCode()

Gets ResponseCodeMessage.

setResponseToValidate(responseToValidate)

Sets ResponseToValidate.

getResponseToValidate()

Gets Response To Validate.

setGatewayld(gatewayld)

Sets Gateway ID.

getGatewayld()

Gets Gateway ID.

setType(type)

Sets Type.

getType()

Gets Type.

setRequestTypeOfPayment(requestTypeOfPayment)

Sets RequestTypeOfPayment.

getRequestTypeofPayment()

Gets RequestTypeOfPayment.

setRequestTransactionType(requestTransactionType)

Sets RequestTransactionType.

getRequestTransactionType()

Gets RequestTransactionType.

setIsSuccess(isSuccess)

Sets IsSuccess

getIsSuccess()

Gets IsSuccess.

setError(error)

Sets Error.

```
getErrors()
   Gets Errors.
   setResponseValueByKey(getResponseValueByKey)
   Sets ResponseValueByKey
   getResponseValueByKey()
   Gets ResponseValueByKey.
   setId(Id)
   Sets ID.
   getld()
   Gets ID.
   setMessage(message)
   Sets Message.
   getMessage()
   Gets Message.
   setEntity(entity)
   Sets Message.
   getEntity()
   Gets Message.
   setGatewayStatus(gatewayStatus)
   Sets gatewayStatus.
   getGatewayStatus()
   Gets GatewayStatus.
setResponseCodeMessage(responseCodeMessage)
Sets ResponseCodeMessage.
Signature
global void setResponseCodeMessage(String responseCodeMessage)
Parameters
responseCodeMessage
   Type: String
Return Value
Type: void
getResponseCodeMessage()
Gets ResponseCodeMessage.
```

global String getResponseCodeMessage()

Return Value

Type: String

setCardCodeResponse(cardCodeResponse)

Sets CardCodeResponse.

Signature

global void setCardCodeResponse(String cardCodeResponse)

Parameters

cardCodeResponse
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

getCardCodeResponse()

Gets CardCodeResponse.

Signature

global String getCardCodeResponse()

Return Value

Type: String

setCustomerProfileToken(customerProfileToken)

Sets customerProfileToken.

Signature

global void setCustomerProfileToken(String customerProfileToken)

Parameters

customerProfileToken
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

getCustomerProfileToken()

Gets CustomerProfileToken.

Signature

global String getCustomerProfileToken()

Return Value

Type: String

setPaymentToken(paymentToken)

Sets PaymentToken.

Signature

public void setPaymentToken(String paymentToken)

Parameters

paymentToken
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

getPaymentToken()

Gets PaymentToken.

Signature

global String getPaymentToken()

Return Value

Type: String

setResponseStatus(responseStatus)

Sets ResponseStatus.

Signature

global void setResponseStatus(String responseStatus)

responseStatus
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

getResponseStatus()

Gets ResponseStatus.

Signature

```
global String getResponseStatus()
```

Return Value

Type: String

setGatewayRequest(gatewayRequest)

Sets the capture payment request sent to the payment gateway.

Signature

```
global void setGatewayRequest(String gatewayRequest)
```

Parameters

gatewayRequest
Type: String

Return Value

Type: Void

getGatewayRequest(gatewayRequest)

Returns the string containing the payment capture request sent to the gateway.

Signature

global String GatewayRequest()

Return Value

Type: String

setGatewayResponse(gatewayResponse)

Returns the gateway's response following a capture payment transaction.

Signature

global void setGatewayResponse(String gatewayResponse)

Parameters

gatewayResponse
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

getGatewayResponse(gatewayResponse)

Returns the string containing the gateway's response from a capture payment transaction.

Signature

global void getGatewayResponse()

Return Value

Type: Void

setResponseMessage(responseMessage)

Sets ResponseMessage.

Signature

global void setResponseMessage(String responseMessage)

Parameters

responseMessage
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

getResponseMessage()

Gets ResponseMessage.

global String getResponseMessage()

Return Value

Type: String

setResponseCode (responseCode)

Sets ResponseCode.

Signature

global void setResponseCode(String responseCode)

Parameters

responseCode
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

getResponseCode()

Gets ResponseCodeMessage.

Signature

global String getResponseCode()

Return Value

Type: String

setResponseToValidate(responseToValidate)

Sets ResponseToValidate.

Signature

global void setResponseToValidate(String responseToValidate)

Parameters

responseToValidate
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

getResponseToValidate()

Gets Response To Validate.

Signature

public String getResponseToValidate()

Return Value

Type: String

setGatewayId(gatewayId)

Sets Gateway ID.

Signature

global void setGatewayId(String gatewayId)

Parameters

gatewayId
 Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

getGatewayId()

Gets Gateway ID.

Signature

global String getGatewayId()

Return Value

Type: String

setType(type)

Sets Type.

Signature

global void setType(String type)

Parameters

type

Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

getType()

Gets Type.

Signature

global String getType()

Return Value

Type: String

setRequestTypeOfPayment(requestTypeOfPayment)

Sets RequestTypeOfPayment.

Signature

global void setRequestTypeOfPayment(String requestTypeOfPayment)

Parameters

 $\begin{tabular}{ll} request Type Of Payment \\ Type: String \end{tabular}$

Return Value

Type: void

getRequestTypeofPayment()

Gets RequestTypeOfPayment.

Signature

global String getRequestTypeofPayment()

Return Value

Type: String

setRequestTransactionType(requestTransactionType)

Sets RequestTransactionType.

Signature

global void setRequestTransactionType(String requestTransactionType)

Parameters

requestTransactionType
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

getRequestTransactionType()

Gets RequestTransactionType.

Signature

global String getRequestTransactionType()

Return Value

Type: String

setIsSuccess (isSuccess)

Sets IsSuccess

Signature

global void setIsSuccess(Boolean isSuccess)

Parameters

isSuccess
Type: Boolean

Return Value

Type: void

getIsSuccess()

Gets IsSuccess.

Signature

```
global Boolean getIsSuccess()
```

Return Value

Type: Boolean

setError(error)

Sets Error.

Signature

global void setError(String error)

Parameters

error

Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

getErrors()

Gets Errors.

Signature

public List<String> getErrors()

Return Value

Type: List<String>

setResponseValueByKey(getResponseValueByKey)

Sets ResponseValueByKey

Signature

public void setResponseValueByKey(Map<String,String> getResponseValueByKey)

Parameters

getResponseValueByKey
Type: Map<String,String>

Return Value Type: void getResponseValueByKey() Gets ResponseValueByKey. **Signature** global Map<string, string> getResponseValueByKey() **Return Value** Type: Map<string, string> setId(Id) Sets ID. **Signature** global void setId(String Id) **Parameters** Ιd Type: String **Return Value** Type: void getId() Gets ID. **Signature** global String getId() **Return Value** Type: String setMessage (message) Sets Message. **Signature**

global void setMessage(String message)

Parameters

message Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

getMessage()

Gets Message.

Signature

global String getMessage()

Return Value

Type: String

setEntity(entity)

Sets Message.

Signature

global void setEntity(String entity)

Parameters

entity
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

getEntity()

Gets Message.

Signature

global String getEntity()

Return Value

Type: String

setGatewayStatus(gatewayStatus)

Sets gatewayStatus.

Signature

global void setGatewayStatus(GatewayStatusType gatewayStatus)

Parameters

gatewayStatus
Type: GatewayStatusType

Return Value

Type: void

getGatewayStatus()

Gets GatewayStatus.

Signature

global GatewayStatusType getGatewayStatus()

Return Value

Type: GatewayStatusType

TransactionResult.GatewayStatusType Enum

An enum defining the appropriate gateway status values returned by the payment gateway.

Enum Values

The following are the values of the blng.TransactionResult.GatewayStatusType enum.

Value	Description The gateway has processed the transaction successfully.	
Success		
Decline	Declined responses occur when the gateway's call to the customer bank fails. This usually happens for customer issues such as insufficient funds, a frozen credit card, or a brief disconnection during the call.	
ValidationError	Gateways respond with validation errors when Salesforce Billing sends incorrect customer payment information, such as misspelled credit card data or a CVV with missing numbers. Payment runs won't create payments from transactions with a gateway status of Validation Error. Users should change the incorrect payment information on their payment method so that future payment runs can use it for payments.	

Value	Description Gateways respond with a permanent failure code when the customer's bank recognizes their payment account as closed, terminated, or fraudulent. In this case, the gateway won't accept any further calls from the payment method associated with this transaction. Following a permanent fail response, a transaction changes its gateway status to Permanent Fail.	
PermanentFail		
RequiresReview	Gateways respond with a review code when the gateway call initially fails, but the payment method may still work following extra processing. For example, some banks send out this type of response when they have further questions about the payment request, and will provide an authorization code manually when the payment manager calls the processor.	
Indeterminate	Gateways send indeterminate responses when they require the user to check the status of the transaction request. This often occurs following server timeouts, system failure, or any action that unexpectedly interrupts the gateway's ability to process the payment.	
SystemError	Salesforce Billing provides a system fail response when it has to end its gateway payment request before receiving a response. This can happen due to gateway server errors, invalid customer credentials, or anytime Salesforce Billing's request times out before it receives a gateway response. System failures occur before Salesforce Billing's request reaches the gateway, so there's no risk of an unaccounted payment remaining in the gateway. If your transaction has a System Fail gateway status, you can either manually create the payment or wait for another payment run to pick up your invoice.	

Custom Gateway Classes

Salesforce Billing provides three classes that users can customize to integrate with their chosen payment gateway.

YourGatewayAPI

YourGatewayAPI is a base class that connects the Salesforce Billing package to your payment gateway package. All user gateway API classes will be different based on your needs. However, we've provided a template that you can use to help create your own.

YourGatewayName

YourGateWayName is a base class. All user gateway API classes will be different based on your needs. However, we've provided a template that you can use to help create your own.

YourGatewayNameUtils

YourGatewayNameUtils is a singleton utility class that interacts with an external payment gateway. All user gateway API classes will be different based on your needs. However, we've provided a template that you can use to help create your own.

YourHttpService

YourHttpService is an example of common HTTP utilities that might be required while building a partner package. All user gateway API classes will be different based on your needs. However, we've provided a template that you can use to help create your own.

YourGatewayAPI

YourGatewayAPI is a base class that connects the Salesforce Billing package to your payment gateway package. All user gateway API classes will be different based on your needs. However, we've provided a template that you can use to help create your own.



Available in:

YourGatewayAPI references the following public classes.

- YourGatewayName
- YourGatewayNameUtils

```
qlobal class YourGatewayAPI implements blnq.PaymentGateWay, blnq.PaymentGateWays,
blng.PaymentGateWayStatus
   // CONSTANT
   // -----
   // STATIC VARIABLES
   // -----
  // Attribute to implement singleton pattern for YourGatewayName class
  private static YourGatewayName YourGatewayNameInstance;
   // -----
   // VARIABLES
   // Attribute to implement singleton pattern for AuthorizeDotNet class
  private static final String GENERATE TOKEN = 'generateToken';
  private static final String AUTHORIZE TRANSACTION = 'authorizeTransaction';
  private static final String CHARGE TRANSACTION = 'chargeTransaction';
  private static final String VOID TRANSACTION = 'voidTransaction';
  private static final String REFUND TRANSACTION = 'refundTransaction';
  private static final String CAPTURE TRANSACTION = 'captureTransaction';
  private static final String VOID REFUND TRANSACTION = 'voidRefundTransaction';
  private static final String VOID TOKEN TRANSACTION = 'voidTokenTransaction';
  private static final String GET PAYMENT STATUS = 'getPaymentStatus';
  private static final String GET_REFUND_STATUS = 'getRefundStatus';
  private static final String NON REFERRED REFUND = 'nonReferredRefund';
  private static final String PROCESS PAYMENTS = 'processPayments';
   // Methods
   /**
   * @name service
   * @description service method to create an only instance of TransactionService class
             if serviceInstance is NULL then only create a new instance otherwise
             return the existing one
   * @param NA
   * @return TransactionService instance
   * @exception
   * @author
```

```
* @created
    * @remark
    * @change
    */
    @TestVisible
   private static YourGatewayName service()
    {
        if (NULL == YourGatewayNameInstance)
           YourGatewayNameInstance = YourGatewayName.getInstance();
       return YourGatewayNameInstance;
    /**
    * @name processPayments
    * @description Method to generate Token
    * @param
    * @return
   * @exception
    * @author
    * @created 2016-11-03
    * @remark
    * @change
    * /
   global static Map<String, blng.TransactionResult> processPayments(Map<String,</pre>
blng.TransactionParameter> mapOfTransactionParameterById, blng.PaymentGatewayParameter
paymentGatewayParameter)
    {
        if(paymentGatewayParameter.getTransactionType() == GENERATE TOKEN)
            return generateToken (mapOfTransactionParameterById);
        else if(paymentGatewayParameter.getTransactionType() == AUTHORIZE TRANSACTION)
            return authorizeTransaction(mapOfTransactionParameterById);
        else if(paymentGatewayParameter.getTransactionType() == CHARGE TRANSACTION)
            return chargeTransaction(mapOfTransactionParameterById);
        else if(paymentGatewayParameter.getTransactionType() == VOID TRANSACTION)
           return voidTransaction(mapOfTransactionParameterById);
        else if(paymentGatewayParameter.getTransactionType() == REFUND TRANSACTION)
            return refundTransaction(mapOfTransactionParameterById);
        else if(paymentGatewayParameter.getTransactionType() == CAPTURE TRANSACTION)
           return captureTransaction(mapOfTransactionParameterById);
        else if(paymentGatewayParameter.getTransactionType() == VOID REFUND TRANSACTION)
```

```
{
            return voidRefundTransaction(mapOfTransactionParameterById);
        else if(paymentGatewayParameter.getTransactionType() == VOID TOKEN TRANSACTION)
           return voidTokenTransaction(mapOfTransactionParameterById);
        else if(paymentGatewayParameter.getTransactionType() == GET PAYMENT STATUS)
           return getPaymentStatus(mapOfTransactionParameterById);
        else if(paymentGatewayParameter.getTransactionType() == GET REFUND STATUS)
           return getRefundStatus (mapOfTransactionParameterById);
        }
        else if(paymentGatewayParameter.getTransactionType() == NON REFERRED REFUND)
           return nonReferredRefund(mapOfTransactionParameterById);
       return NULL;
    }
    * @name generateToken
    * @description Method to generate Token for a Payment Method
    * @param Map[Key => String [unique Id], Value => TransactionParameter]
    * @return Map[Key => String [unique Id], Value => TransactionResult]
   * @exception
    * @author
    * @created
    * @remark
    * @change
    */
   global static Map<String, blng.TransactionResult> generateToken(Map<String,</pre>
blng.TransactionParameter> mapOfTransactionParameterById)
    {
       return service().generateToken(mapOfTransactionParameterById);
    }
    * @name voidTokenTransaction
   * @description Method to void Token for a Payment method Token
   * @param Map[Key => String [unique Id], Value => TransactionParameter]
   * @return Map[Key => String [unique Id], Value => TransactionResult]
    * @exception
   * @author
   * @created
    * @remark
    * @change
   global static Map<String, blng.TransactionResult> voidTokenTransaction(Map<String,</pre>
blng.TransactionParameter> mapOfTransactionParameterById)
   {
```

```
return service().voidTokenTransaction(mapOfTransactionParameterById);
    }
    * @name authorizeTransaction
    * @description Method to Authorize a payment for a Invoice
    * @param Map[Key => String [unique Id], Value => TransactionParameter]
    * @return Map[Key => String [unique Id], Value => TransactionResult]
   * @exception
   * @author
    * @created
    * @remark
    * @change
   * /
   global static Map<String, blng.TransactionResult> authorizeTransaction(Map<String,
blng.TransactionParameter> mapOfTransactionParameterById)
       return service().authorizeTransaction(mapOfTransactionParameterById);
   }
   /**
    * @name chargeTransaction
   * @description Method to Charge a payment for a Invoice
   * @param Map[Key => String [unique Id], Value => TransactionParameter]
    * @return Map[Key => String [unique Id], Value => TransactionResult]
   * @exception
    * @author
   * @created
   * @remark
    * @change
   global static Map<String, blng.TransactionResult> chargeTransaction(Map<String,
blng.TransactionParameter> mapOfTransactionParameterById)
       return service().chargeTransaction(mapOfTransactionParameterById);
    }
    /**
   * @name captureTransaction
   * @description Method to capture a payment for a Authorize Transaction
    * @param Map[Key => String [unique Id], Value => TransactionParameter]
   * @return Map[Key => String [unique Id], Value => TransactionResult]
   * @exception
   * @author
    * @created
    * @remark
    * @change
   global static Map<String, blng.TransactionResult> captureTransaction(Map<String,</pre>
blng.TransactionParameter> mapOfTransactionParameterById)
   {
       return service().captureTransaction(mapOfTransactionParameterById);
    }
```

```
* @name voidTransaction
   * @description Method to Void a payment for a Invoice
   * @param Map[Key => String [unique Id], Value => TransactionParameter]
   * @return Map[Key => String [unique Id], Value => TransactionResult]
   * @exception
    * @author
   * @created
   * @remark
    * @change
   */
   global static Map<String, blng.TransactionResult> voidTransaction(Map<String,</pre>
blng.TransactionParameter> mapOfTransactionParameterById)
       return service().voidTransaction(mapOfTransactionParameterById);
    /**
    * @name refundTransaction
   * @description Method to Refund a payment for a payment Transaction
    * @param Map[Key => String [unique Id], Value => TransactionParameter]
   * @return Map[Key => String [unique Id], Value => TransactionResult]
   * @exception
    * @author
   * @created
    * @remark
    * @change
   global static Map<String, blng.TransactionResult> refundTransaction(Map<String,
blng.TransactionParameter> mapOfTransactionParameterById)
       return service().refundTransaction(mapOfTransactionParameterById);
    }
    /**
   * @name nonReferencedRefund
   * @description Method to non Referenced Refund a payment for a Invoice
   * @param Map[Key => String [unique Id], Value => TransactionParameter]
    * @return Map[Key => String [unique Id], Value => TransactionParameter]
    * @exception
   * @author
   * @created
    * @remark
    * @change
   * /
   global static Map<String, blng.TransactionResult> nonReferredRefund(Map<String,
blng.TransactionParameter> mapOfTransactionParameterById)
       return service().nonReferencedRefund(mapOfTransactionParameterById);
    }
    /**
```

```
* @name voidRefundTransaction
    * @description Method to Void refund for a Refund Transaction
    * @param Map[Key => String [unique Id], Value => TransactionParameter]
    * @return Map[Key => String [unique Id], Value => TransactionResult]
    * @exception
   * @author
   * @created
    * @remark
    * @change
   * /
   global static Map<String, blng.TransactionResult> voidRefundTransaction(Map<String,
blng.TransactionParameter> mapOfTransactionParameterById)
       return service().voidRefundTransaction(mapOfTransactionParameterById);
   }
    /**
   * @name getPaymentStatus
    * @description Method to get payment status for a Payment Transaction
   * @param Map[Key => String [unique Id], Value => TransactionParameter]
    * @return Map[Key => String [unique Id], Value => TransactionResult]
    * @exception
    * @author
   * @created
    * @remark
    * @change
    */
   global static Map<String, blng.TransactionResult> getPaymentStatus(Map<String,</pre>
blng.TransactionParameter> mapOfTransactionParameterById)
   {
       return service().getPaymentStatus(mapOfTransactionParameterById);
    /**
    * @name getRefundStatus
    * @description Method to get refund status for a Refund Transaction
    * @param Map[Key => String [unique Id], Value => TransactionParameter]
   * @return Map[Key => String [unique Id], Value => TransactionResult]
   * @exception
    * @author
    * @created
    * @remark
    * @change
   */
   global static Map<String, blng.TransactionResult> getRefundStatus(Map<String,
blnq.TransactionParameter> mapOfTransactionParameterById)
   {
        return service().getPaymentStatus(mapOfTransactionParameterById);
    }
    /**
     * @name populateGatewayStatus
    * @description Method that populates the GatewayStatus enum on the TransactionResult,
     ^{\star} given return codes that are already set in the TransactionResults
```

```
* @param transactionResult
   */
   global static void populateGatewayStatus(blng.TransactionResult transactionResult)
   {
       service().populateGatewayStatus(transactionResult);
   }
}
```

YourGatewayName

YourGateWayName is a base class. All user gateway API classes will be different based on your needs. However, we've provided a template that you can use to help create your own.

This class shows an example of a void token calling the CyberSource payment gateway. The gateway receives a request and then provides a response through the TransactionResult object. Salesforce Billing evaluates the response and filters it into one of several fields shown in the payment transaction record's Gateway Status field. For more information on payment transactions and managing gateway responses in Salesforce Billing, check out Managing Payment Transactions.

EDITIONS

```
Note: Map<String, blng.TransactionParameter> is the parameter in all methods of this class
     blng.TransactionParameter class is a global class which list of global method exposed
detailed in next section
     and String in the map is a Unique Id which could be Invoice or Account Id
     Map<String, blng.TransactionResult> is the return for all the Methods in this class
     blng.TransactionResult class is a global class with a list of global method detailed
in next section
      the string should be the same string of parameter
      public class YourGatewayName
{
   //Add variables here
   //Gateway Status related variables
   private static Map<string, blng.TransactionResult.GatewayStatusType>
mapGatewayStatusEnumTypesByStrings =
          new Map<string, blng.TransactionResult.GatewayStatusType>();
   static {
       List<br/>blng.TransactionResult.GatewayStatusType> enumValues =
blng.TransactionResult.GatewayStatusType.values();
       for (Integer i = 0; i < enumValues.size(); i++) {</pre>
          mapGatewayStatusEnumTypesByStrings.put(enumValues.get(i).name(),
enumValues.get(i));
   }
   // CONSTANT
```

```
private static final String ACCEPT = 'ACCEPT';
       private static final String REJECT = 'REJECT';
       private static final String SUCCESS = 'SUCCESS';
       private static final String FAILURE = 'FAILURE';
       private static final String ERROR = 'ERROR';
       private static final String DECISION = 'decision';
   /**
   * @name handleError
   * @description populates TransactionResult with error values
   * @Param
    * @return NA
    * @exception NA
   private void handleError (blng.TransactionResult transactionResult,
            String pointOfFailure,
           blng.TransactionResult.GatewayStatusType gatewayStatus,
            Exception e) {
       String newErrorMessage = pointOfFailure + (e != null ? ': ' + e.getMessage() :
'');
       // if there are previous errors, set the response message by concatenating them
in the right order
       if (!transactionResult.getErrors().isEmpty()) {
           String prevErrorMessage = '';
            for (String err : transactionResult.getErrors()) {
               prevErrorMessage += (String.isEmpty(prevErrorMessage) ? '' : '. ') + err;
            transactionResult.setResponseMessage(prevErrorMessage);
        } else {
            transactionResult.setResponseMessage (newErrorMessage);
       // set the rest of the values
       transactionResult.setIsSuccess(false);
       transactionResult.setError(newErrorMessage);
       transactionResult.setResponseToValidate(FAILURE);
       if (transactionResult.getResponseCode() != null) {
            populateGatewayStatus(transactionResult);
        } else {
           // set the response code to ERROR if it does not exist, which will be in all
cases except when the response returns from the gateway
           transactionResult.setResponseCode(ERROR);
            transactionResult.setGatewayStatus(gatewayStatus);
       }
   }
   /**
   * @name populateTransactionResultForVoidToken
   * @description Method to populate Transaction Result for CyberSource Void Token
   * @param Map[Key => String [unique Id], Value => TransactionParameter]
    * @return Map[Key => String [unique Id], Value => TransactionResult]
    * /
```

```
public Map<String, blng.TransactionResult>
populateTransactionResultForVoidToken (Map<String, blng.TransactionParameter>
mapOfTransactionParameterById)
        Map<String, blng.TransactionResult> mapOfTransactionResultById = new Map<String,
blng.TransactionResult>();
        for(String idToProcess : mapOfTransactionParameterById.KeySet())
            blng.TransactionParameter transactionParameterToProcess;
                transactionParameterToProcess =
mapOfTransactionParameterById.get(idToProcess);
                if (NULL !=
transactionParameterToProcess.transactionResult.getGatewayStatus()) {
                    mapOfTransactionResultById.put(idToProcess,
transactionParameterToProcess.transactionResult);
                    continue;
                //Populating the transaction Parameter class based on the response is
success or failure
                if(transactionParameterToProcess.getResponseValueByKey().get(DECISION) ==
 ACCEPT)
                    //The response is success
transactionParameterToProcess.transactionResult.setResponseToValidate(SUCCESS);
                    transactionParameterToProcess.transactionResult.setIsSuccess(true);
              else if(transactionParameterToProcess.getResponseValueByKey().get(DECISION)
 == REJECT)
                    //The response is failure
transactionParameterToProcess.transactionResult.setResponseToValidate(FAILURE);
                    transactionParameterToProcess.transactionResult.setIsSuccess(false);
                //Populating payment gateway response
                transactionParameterToProcess.transactionResult.setId(idToProcess);
                transactionParameterToProcess.transactionResult.setResponseCode
                 (transactionParameterToProcess.getResponseValueByKey().get(REASONCODE));
              if(NULL != transactionParameterToProcess.transactionResult.getResponseCode())
                   transactionParameterToProcess.transactionResult.setResponseCodeMessage
(YourGatewayNameUtils.getGatewayReturnCode().get(transactionParameterToProcess.transactionResult.getResponseCode()));
                //Populating payment gateway response
                transactionParameterToProcess.transactionResult.setPaymentToken
```

```
(transactionParameterToProcess.getResponseValueByKey().get(SUBSCRIPTIONID));
                //Populate gateway status
                populateGatewayStatus(transactionParameterToProcess.transactionResult);
mapOfTransactionResultById.put(idToProcess,transactionParameterToProcess.transactionResult);
            } catch (Exception e) {
                handleError(transactionParameterToProcess.transactionResult,
FAILED POPULATING RESULT + IN VOID TOKEN,
blng.TransactionResult.GatewayStatusType.SystemError, e);
        //Return map of transaction results
        return mapOfTransactionResultById;
   // default Gateway Status
   private static final blng.TransactionResult.GatewayStatusType defaultGatewayStatus =
blng.TransactionResult.GatewayStatusType.Indeterminate;
    //Generate Token method Salesforce billing interface class will use this class to
Generate token
   public static Map<String, blng.TransactionResult> generateToken(Map<String,
blng.TransactionParameter> mapOfTransactionParameterById)
       //Actual Implementation for Token takes place here
   //Void Token method Salesforce billing interface class will use this class to void
Token Transaction
   public static Map<String, blng.TransactionResult> voidTokenTransaction(Map<String,</pre>
blng.TransactionParameter> mapOfTransactionParameterById)
       //Actual Implementation for Void Token takes place here
       if(!mapOfTransactionParameterById.IsEmpty())
        {
            for (blng.TransactionParameter transactionParameterToProcess :
mapOfTransactionParameterById.Values())
                // validate gateway settings
                try {
YourGatewayNameUtils.validateGatewaySettings(transactionParameterToProcess);
(!transactionParameterToProcess.transactionResult.getErrors().IsEmpty()) {
                        handleError(transactionParameterToProcess.transactionResult,
FAILED GATEWAY SETTINGS + IN VOID TOKEN,
blng.TransactionResult.GatewayStatusType.ValidationError, null);
                        continue;
                    }
                } catch (Exception e) {
                    \verb|handleError| (transactionParameterToProcess.transactionResult, \\
```

```
FAILED GATEWAY SETTINGS + IN VOID TOKEN,
blng.TransactionResult.GatewayStatusType.ValidationError, e);
                    continue;
               // Calling YourGatewayNameUtils class to populate the Request for generate
void token XML
               trv {
YourGatewayNameUtils.getInstance().generateVoidTokenXML(transactionParameterToProcess);
                } catch (Exception e) {
                    handleError(transactionParameterToProcess.transactionResult,
FAILED XML GENERATION + IN VOID TOKEN, blng.TransactionResult.GatewayStatusType.SystemError,
                    continue;
                }
                try {
                    // Calling YourHttpService class to send a Request
                    YourHttpService sendHttpRequest = YourHttpService.getInstance();
                    sendHttpRequest.addHeader('Content-type', 'text/xml');
sendHttpRequest.setTokenisationHeader(transactionParameterToProcess.getGateWay().MerchantId c,
transactionParameterToProcess.getGateWay().TransactionSecurityKey c);
                    // Sends the request to payment gateway
sendHttpRequest.post(transactionParameterToProcess.getGateWay().TestMode c ?
YOUR GATEWAY TEST ENDPOINT URL SANDBOX :
YOUR GATEWAY TEST ENDPOINT PRODUCTION, transactionParameterToProcess.getRequestBody());
                    if(!Test.isRunningTest())
                    {
                        // Populating the map of Response for transaction parameter class
from the response received by payment gateway
                        transactionParameterToProcess.mapOfResponseValueByKey.putAll
(YourGatewayNameUtils.getElements(sendHttpRequest.getResponse().getBodyDocument().getRootElement()));
                    }
                    else
                        Dom.Document doc = new Dom.Document();
                        doc.load(TEST RESPONSE BODY); // You can provide a string for
TEST RESPONSE BODY in test mode
                        transactionParameterToProcess.mapOfResponseValueByKey.putAll
                        (YourGatewayNameUtils.getElements(doc.getRootElement()));
                } catch (Exception e) {
                    handleError(transactionParameterToProcess.transactionResult,
FAILED CALLOUT + IN VOID TOKEN, blng.TransactionResult.GatewayStatusType.SystemError, e);
        // Calling populate Transaction Result For Void Token class to Return map of
        return populateTransactionResultForVoidToken(mapOfTransactionParameterById);
```

```
}
   //Authorize Transaction method Salesforce billing interface class will use this class
to Authorize Transaction
   public static Map<String, blng.TransactionResult> authorizeTransaction(Map<String,</pre>
blnq.TransactionParameter> mapOfTransactionParameterById)
        //Actual Implementation for Authorize takes place here
   //Capture Transaction method Salesforce billing interface class will use this class
to capture Transaction
   public static Map<String, blng.TransactionResult> captureTransaction(Map<String,
blng.TransactionParameter> mapOfTransactionParameterById)
        //Actual Implementation for capture takes place here
    //Charge Transaction method Salesforce billing interface class will use this class to
Charge Transaction
   public static Map<String, blng.TransactionResult> chargeTransaction(Map<String,
blng.TransactionParameter> mapOfTransactionParameterById)
        //Actual Implementation for Charge takes place here
   //void Transaction method Salesforce billing interface class will use this class to
void Transaction
   public static Map<String, blng.TransactionResult> voidTransaction(Map<String,</pre>
blng.TransactionParameter> mapOfTransactionParameterById)
        //Actual Implementation for void Transaction takes place here
    //RefundTransaction method Salesforce billing interface class will use this class to
Refund Transaction
   public static Map<String, blng.TransactionResult> refundTransaction(Map<String,</pre>
blng.TransactionParameter> mapOfTransactionParameterById)
        //Actual Implementation for Refund takes place here
    //Non Referenced Refund method Salesforce billing interface class will use this class
to non referenced refund Transaction
   public static Map<String, blng.TransactionResult> nonReferencedRefund(Map<String,
blnq.TransactionParameter> mapOfTransactionParameterById)
   {
        //Actual Implementation for non referenced refund takes place here
   //void Refund method Salesforce billing interface class will use this class to non
void Refund Transaction
   public static Map<String, blng.TransactionResult> voidRefundTransaction(Map<String,
blng.TransactionParameter> mapOfTransactionParameterById)
```

```
{
        //Actual Implementation for void Refund Transaction takes place here
    //Get payment status method Salesforce billing interface class will use this class to
get payment status Transaction
   public static Map<String, blng.TransactionResult> getPaymentStatus(Map<String,
blng.TransactionParameter> mapOfTransactionParameterById)
        //Actual Implementation for get payment status takes place here
   //Get refund status method Salesforce billing interface class will use this class to
get refund status Transaction
   public static Map<String, blng.TransactionResult> getRefundStatus(Map<String,</pre>
blnq.TransactionParameter> mapOfTransactionParameterById)
        //Actual Implementation for get refund status takes place here
     * Does a SOQL lookup on the mapper table and gets the gateway status mapped to the
return code
     * Returns the default enum if no match is found
     * @param transactionResult
    * /
    public void populateGatewayStatus(blng.TransactionResult transactionResult) {
         blng.TransactionResult.GatewayStatusType gatewayStatus = defaultGatewayStatus;
         // actual implementation of mapping
         transactionResult.setGatewayStatus(gatewayStatus);
     }
```

YourGatewayNameUtils

YourGatewayNameUtils is a singleton utility class that interacts with an external payment gateway. All user gateway API classes will be different based on your needs. However, we've provided a template that you can use to help create your own.

This code shows an example of how to generate a void token request for CyberSource. The class contains several methods.

- A utility method to construct the void token request payload for CyberSource
- A utility method to validate gateway settings
- A utility to return a map of CyberSource Gateway Return code to a friendly description
- A utility method to pass the XML node and retrieve a map of element to value

EDITIONS

```
private static YourGatewayNameUtils yourGatewayNameUtilsInstance;
    * @name getInstance
    * @description get an Instance of Service class
     * @param NA
     * @return YourGatewayNameUtils Generator Class Instance
   public static YourGatewayNameUtils getInstance() {
        if (NULL == yourGatewayNameUtilsInstance) {
           yourGatewayNameUtilsInstance = new YourGatewayNameUtils();
       return yourGatewayNameUtilsInstance;
    }
    /**
    * @name validateGatewaySettings
   * @description Validates Gateway Details
    * @param TransactionParameter
    * @return NA
    * @exception NA
   * /
   public static void validateGatewaySettings(blng.TransactionParameter
transactionParameterToProcess) {
        if (String.IsBlank(transactionParameterToProcess.getGateWay().MerchantId c)) {
            transactionParameterToProcess.transactionResult.setError('MerchantId is
missing');
       } else if
(String.IsBlank(transactionParameterToProcess.getGateWay().MerchantReference c)) {
           transactionParameterToProcess.transactionResult.setError('MerchantReference
is missing');
       } else if
(String.IsBlank(transactionParameterToProcess.getGateWay().TransactionSecurityKey c)) {
          transactionParameterToProcess.transactionResult.setError('TransactionSecurityKey
is missing');
       }
    }
        * @name getErrorCyberSourceCode
        * @description Return's Map of Cyber source error description By code
        * @param NA
        * @return Map [Key => String [Code] , Value => String [Error Message]]
      /// include mapping of all codes based on gateway you are implementing
     public static map<string, string> getGatewayReturnCode() {
       Map<string, string> mapOfMessageByErrorCode = new Map<string, string>();
        mapOfMessageByErrorCode.put('100', 'Successful transaction');
        mapOfMessageByErrorCode.put('101', 'The request is missing one or more required
fields.
           Possible action: see the reply fields missingField 0...N for which fields are
missing. Resend the request with the complete information. For information about missing
```

```
or invalid fields');
       mapOfMessageByErrorCode.put('102', 'Invalid data');
       mapOfMessageByErrorCode.put('151', 'This error does not include timeouts between
the client and the server.
          To avoid duplicating the transaction, do not resend the request until you have
reviewed the transaction status at the Business Center');
       mapOfMessageByErrorCode.put('152', 'The request was received, but a service did
not finish running in time.
           To avoid duplicating the transaction, do not resend the request until you have
reviewed the transaction status at the Business Center');
       mapOfMessageByErrorCode.put('201', 'The issuing bank has questions about the
request.
          You will not receive an authorization code programmatically, but you can obtain
one verbally by calling the processor');
     /// include mapping of all error codes based on gateway you are implementing
       return mapOfMessageByErrorCode;
   }
    /**
     * @name getElements
    * @description Populates's map Of Response Value By Key
     * @param Dom XML Node
     * @return Map [Key => String [Name] , Value => String [text]]
     * @exception NA
     * /
   public static Map<string, string> getElements(DOM.XMLNode node) {
        if (node.getNodeType() == DOM.XMLNodeType.ELEMENT) {
            if (String.IsNotBlank(node.getText().trim())) {
                mapOfResponseValueByKey.put(node.getName(), node.getText().trim());
            }
            for (Dom.XMLNode child : node.getChildElements()) {
               getElements(child);
        }
       return mapOfResponseValueByKey;
    }
   public void generateToken(List<blng.TransactionParameter> listOfTransactionParameter)
        //Frame xml/json for generate token api method
    }
   // Example from Cybersource to generate a voidToken Request
   public void generateVoidToken(List<blng.TransactionParameter> listOfTransactionParameter)
        //Frame xml/json for void token api method
        XmlStreamWriter writer = new XmlStreamWriter();
        // Populate Document start
```

```
writer.writeStartDocument('utf-8', '1.0');
        // Populate Envelope start
       writer.writeStartElement('s', 'Envelope',
'http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/');
       writer.writeAttribute('xmlns', 'http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/', 's',
'http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/');
       // Populate Header start
      writer.writeStartElement('s', 'Header', 'http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/');
        // Populate Security start
        writer.writeStartElement('wsse', 'Security',
'http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/soap/envelope/');
        writer.writeAttribute('xmlns',
'http://docs.oasis-open.org/wss/2004/01/oasis-200401-wss-wssecurity-secext-1.0.xsd', 'wsse',
 'http://docs.oasis-open.org/wss/2004/01/oasis-200401-wss-wssecurity-secext-1.0.xsd');
        // Populate UsernameToken start
        writer.writeStartElement('wsse', 'UsernameToken', '');
        // Populate the Username start
        writer.writeStartElement('wsse', 'Username', '');
        writer.writeCharacters(transactionParameterToProcess.getGateWay().MerchantId c);
        writer.writeEndElement();
        // Populate the Username end
        // Populate the Password start
        writer.writeStartElement('wsse', 'Password', '');
        writer.writeAttribute(NULL, NULL, 'Type',
'http://docs.oasis-open.org/wss/2004/01/oasis-200401-wss-username-token-profile-1.0#PasswordText');
writer.writeCharacters(transactionParameterToProcess.getGateWay().TransactionSecurityKey c);
        writer.writeEndElement();
        // Populate the Password end
        writer.writeEndElement();
        // Populate UsernameToken end
        writer.writeEndElement();
        // Populate Security end
        writer.writeEndElement();
        // Populate Header end
        // Populate Body start
        writer.writeStartElement('s', 'Body', '');
        // Populate RequestMessage start
        writer.writeStartElement('', 'requestMessage', '');
        writer.writeAttribute('', '', 'xmlns',
'urn:schemas-cybersource-com:transaction-data-1.137');
        // Populate merchantID start
        writer.writeStartElement('', 'merchantID', '');
        writer.writeCharacters(transactionParameterToProcess.getGateWay().MerchantId c);
        writer.writeEndElement();
        // Populate merchantID end
        // Populate merchantReferenceCode start
        writer.writeStartElement('', 'merchantReferenceCode', '');
```

```
writer.writeCharacters(transactionParameterToProcess.getGateWay().MerchantReference c);
        writer.writeEndElement();
        // Populate merchantReferenceCode end
        // Populate recurringSubscriptionInfo start
        writer.writeStartElement('', 'recurringSubscriptionInfo', '');
        // Populate subscriptionID start
        writer.writeStartElement('', 'subscriptionID', '');
        //Added by DL,W-3931366, for cardmapping
writer.writeCharacters(getCardMapping(transactionParameterToProcess.getPaymentMethod()));
        writer.writeEndElement();
        // Populate subscriptionID end
        writer.writeEndElement();
        // Populate recurringSubscriptionInfo end
        // Populate paySubscriptionDeleteService start
        writer.writeStartElement('', 'paySubscriptionDeleteService', '');
        writer.writeAttribute('', '', 'run', 'true');
        writer.writeEndElement();
        // Populate paySubscriptionDeleteService end
        // Populate RequestMessage end
       writer.writeEndElement();
        // Populate Body end
       writer.writeEndElement();
        // Populate Envelope end
       writer.writeEndDocument();
        transactionParameterToProcess.setRequestBody(writer.getXmlString());
        writer.close();
    }
   public void generateAuthorize(Map<String, blng.TransactionParameter>
mapOfTransactionParameterByInvoiceId)
        //Frame xml/json for generate authorize api method
    public void generateCapture(Map<String, blng.TransactionParameter>
mapOfTransactionParameterByInvoiceId)
        //Frame xml/json for generate capture api method
   public void generateCharge(Map<String, blng.TransactionParameter>
mapOfTransactionParameterByInvoiceId)
   {
        //Frame xml/json for generate charge api method
   }
   public void generateVoid(Map<String, blng.TransactionParameter>
mapOfTransactionParameterByInvoiceId)
   {
       //Frame xml/json for generate void api method
```

```
public void generateRefund(Map<String, blng.TransactionParameter>
mapOfTransactionParameterByInvoiceId)
        //Frame xml/json for generate refund api method
    public void generatenonReferencedRefund(Map<String, blng.TransactionParameter>
mapOfTransactionParameterByInvoiceId)
        //Frame xml/json for generate non referenced refund api method
   public void generateVoidRefund(Map<String, blng.TransactionParameter>
mapOfTransactionParameterByInvoiceId)
        //Frame xml/json for generate void refund api method
   public void generateGetPaymentStatus(List<blng.TransactionParameter>
listOfTransactionParameter)
        //Frame xml/json for generate get payment status api method
   public void generateGetRefundStatus(List<blng.TransactionParameter>
listOfTransactionParameter)
    {
        //Frame xml/json for generate get refund status api method
}
```

YourHttpService

YourHttpService is an example of common HTTP utilities that might be required while building a partner package. All user gateway API classes will be different based on your needs. However, we've provided a template that you can use to help create your own.

EDITIONS

```
private HttpResponse httpResponse;
private Map<String,String> mapOfHeaderParameter = new Map<String,String>();
private enum Method {GET, POST}
/**
* @name getInstance
* @description get an Instance of Service class
* @params NA
* @return Http Service Class Instance
* @remark
* @change
*/
public static YourHttpService getInstance()
    if (NULL == httpServiceInstance)
       httpServiceInstance = new YourHttpService();
    return httpServiceInstance;
}
/**
* @name get
* @description Get Method to get a HTTP request
* @param endPoint
* @return
* @remark
* @change
*/
public void get(String endPoint)
   send(newRequest(Method.GET, endPoint));
}
/**
* @name post
* @description Post Method to Post a HTTP request
* @param endPoint and requestBody
* @return
* @exception
* @remark
* @change
*/
public void post(String endPoint, String requestBody)
{
    send(newRequest(Method.POST, endPoint, requestBody));
}
* @name addHeader
* @description addHeader Methods to add all the defualt Header's required fo rthe
* @param name and value
```

```
* @return
    * @exception
    * @remark
    * @change
   public void addHeader(String name, String value)
    {
       mapOfHeaderParameter.put(name, value);
   /**
    * @name setHeader
    * @description setHeader Methods to set setHeader for the request
    * @param request
    * @return
   private void setHeader(HttpRequest request)
        for(String headerValue : mapOfHeaderParameter.keySet())
           request.setHeader(headerValue, mapOfHeaderParameter.get(headerValue));
        }
    }
    * @name setAuthorizationHeader
    * @description setAuthorizationHeader Methods to set Authorization Header for the
request
    * @param userName and password
    * @return
   * /
   public void setAuthorizationHeader(String userName, String password)
        if(String.isNotBlank(userName) && String.isNotBlank(password))
            Blob headerValue = blob.valueOf(userName + ':' + password);
          String authorizationHeader = 'Basic ' + EncodingUtil.base64Encode(headerValue);
            addHeader('Authorization', authorizationHeader);
        }
    }
    * @name setTokenisationHeader
   * @description setTokenisationHeader Methods to set Tokenisation Header for the request
    \star @param userName and password
    * @return
    * /
   public void setTokenisationHeader(String userName,String password)
        if(String.isNotBlank(userName) && String.isNotBlank(password))
            Blob headerValue = blob.valueOf(userName + ':' + password);
```

```
String tokenisationHeader = 'Basic ' + EncodingUtil.base64Encode(headerValue);
        addHeader('Tokenisation', tokenisationHeader);
    }
}
/**
* @name newRequest
* @description newRequest Methods to make a new request
* @param method and endPoint
* @return newRequest
* @exception
* /
private HttpRequest newRequest (Method method, String endPoint)
   return newRequest (method, endPoint, NULL);
}
/**
* @name newRequest
* @description newRequest Methods to make a new request
* @param method, endPoint and requestBody
* @return request
* @exception
*/
private HttpRequest newRequest (Method method, String endPoint, String requestBody)
    HttpRequest request = new HttpRequest();
   request.setMethod(Method.name());
   setHeader(request);
    request.setEndpoint(endPoint);
    if (String.isNotBlank(requestBody))
        request.setBody(requestBody);
   request.setTimeout(120000);
   return request;
}
/**
* @name send
* @description send Methods to send a request
* @param request
* @return
* @exception Throws Exception
private void send(HttpRequest request)
{
    try
       httpResponse = new Http().send(request);
    catch(Exception e)
```

```
throw e;
        }
    * @name getResponse
    * @description getResponse Method to get the Response
    * @param NA
    * @return httpResponse
    * @exception
    */
   public HttpResponse getResponse()
       return httpResponse;
    }
   * @name getResponseToString
    * @description getResponse Method to get the Response
    * @param NA
    * @return getResponse
    * @exception
   public String getResponseToString()
       return getResponse().toString();
}
```

Salesforce Billing Tax Integration Developer Guide

Use Salesforce Billing tax integration API to enable communication between Salesforce Billing and external tax engines.

Get Started With Tax Integration API

Configuring settings in the Salesforce Billing package so that your org can communicate with an external tax engine.

Tax Integration Core Classes

Your tax engine references these classes to manage tax information with Salesforce Billing. They can't be modified.

Get Started With Tax Integration API

Configuring settings in the Salesforce Billing package so that your org can communicate with an external tax engine.

Required Tax Integration Fields

All tax integration records require several Salesforce Billing fields to communicate with tax engines, regardless of tax engine type. Certain tax engines also require fields not mentioned here.

Configure Tax Integrations in Salesforce Billing

Add custom settings and remote site settings for your tax engine in Salesforce Billing.

Required Tax Integration Fields

All tax integration records require several Salesforce Billing fields to communicate with tax engines, regardless of tax engine type. Certain tax engines also require fields not mentioned here.

EDITIONS

Available in: All Salesforce Billing Editions

Tax Integration Fields

If you need more fields to hold other information regarding your tax engine, add them on the tax integration object.

Label	API Name	Notes
Active	blngActivec	If this field is inactive, tax treatments won't list this integration as a possible value for their Tax Integration field.
Default	blngDefaultc	Salesforce Billing uses the default tax integration for all tax calculations in your Salesforce Billing org. You can have only one default tax integration at once.
Tax Engine	blngTaxEnginec	Declares the type of tax engine that Salesforce Billing uses for tax calculation. Standard and Avalara AvaTax are available by default. If you're using a different tax engine, add it as a picklist value.

Configure Tax Integrations in Salesforce Billing

Add custom settings and remote site settings for your tax engine in Salesforce Billing.

- 1. Create a custom setting for the class that Salesforce Billing calls and sends to your tax package.
 - a. From Setup, in the Quick Find box, enter Custom Settings, and then select Custom Settings.
 - b. Select Tax Config.
 - c. Select Manage, and then select New.
 - **d.** Enter the name of your tax engine.
 - **e.** Enter the tax package class name that your tax engine will call for tax calculations. The class name should have the format {prefix.classname}.
- 2. Create a custom setting for the tax engine that Salesforce Billing calls and sends to your tax package.
 - a. From Setup, in the Quick Find box, enter Custom Settings, and then select Custom Settings.
 - b. Select Billing Config.
 - c. Select Manage, and then select New.
 - **d.** Enter the name of your tax engine.
 - e. In the Category field, enter Tax.

EDITIONS

- **f.** In the String Value field, enter the name of your tax engine. This value must match the Tax Engine field on the tax integration record for the tax integration that you're configuring. For example, if your tax integration has a value of Avalara Avatax, your String Value field must have the same value.
- **3.** Configure remote site settings.
 - a. From Setup, in the Quick Find box, enter Remote Site Settings, and then select Remote Site Settings.
 - b. Select New Remote Site.
 - c. Add the domain production URL for your tax engine.
 - **d.** If needed, create another remote site for your tax engine's domain sandbox URL.

Tax Integration Core Classes

Your tax engine references these classes to manage tax information with Salesforce Billing. They can't be modified.

The following are the blng namespace classes required for integrating Salesforce Billing with an external tax engine.

TaxParameters Class

Contains a list of setters to populate the data needed for a tax calculation. The data is passed in the tax callout.

TaxResults Class

Contains a list of setter methods to populate the data returned from a tax callout. The data is passed back to Salesforce Billing from the tax connector.

TaxEngines Interface

Your tax engine implements this interface. It contains methods for calculating tax, clearing in-memory entities from the previous call, and clearing legal references from the previous call.

TaxParameters Class

Contains a list of setters to populate the data needed for a tax calculation. The data is passed in the tax callout.

Namespace

blng

TaxParameters Methods

Learn more about the methods available with the TaxParameters class.

TaxParameters Methods

Learn more about the methods available with the TaxParameters class.

The TaxParameters class includes these methods.

getIsCommitOnGetTax()

Returns the value of the isCommitOnGetTax parameter.

getLegalEntityReferences()

Returns the legal entity references.

getSObjectID()

Returns the ID of a single object that requires tax calculation, if any.

getSObjectListoflds()

Returns the list of IDs for objects that require tax calculation.

getSObjectType()

Returns the object type, which can be InvoiceLine, DebitNoteLine, CreditNoteLine, and OrderProduct object.

getTaxMethod()

Returns the type of tax method, which is POST or GET.

setSObjectListoflds(listOfSobjectlds)

Sets the list of IDs for objects that require tax calculation.

setSObjectID(sObjectId)

Sets the ID of a single object that requires tax calculation., if any.

setLegalEntityReferences(legalEntityReference)

Sets the legal entity for the tax treatment. For example, a company can create legal entities to represent their different branches.

setSObjectType(sObjectTypeInstance)

Sets the object type to InvoiceLine, DebitNoteLine, CreditNoteLine, or OrderProduct object.

setTaxMethod(taxMethod)

Sets the method to POST or GET.

setIsCommitOnGetTax(isCommitOnGetTax)

Indicates to external tax providers whether to commit tax.

getIsCommitOnGetTax()

Returns the value of the isCommitOnGetTax parameter.

Signature

```
global Boolean getIsCommitOnGetTax()
```

Parameters

isCommitOnGetTax

Type: Boolean

Return Value

Type: Void

getLegalEntityReferences()

Returns the legal entity references.

Signature

```
global static void getLegalEntityReferences()
```

```
Parameters
```

legalEntityReference
Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

getSObjectID()

Returns the ID of a single object that requires tax calculation, if any.

Signature

```
global static void getSObjectID()
```

Parameters

sObjectId

Type: Id

Return Value

Type: void

getSObjectListoflds()

Returns the list of IDs for objects that require tax calculation.

Signature

```
global List<Id> getSObjectListOfIds()
```

Parameters

listOfSobjectIds
Type: List<|d>

Return Value

Type: Void

getSObjectType()

Returns the object type, which can be InvoiceLine, DebitNoteLine, CreditNoteLine, and OrderProduct object.

Signature

```
global static void getSObjectType()
```

```
Parameters
```

sObjectTypeInstance
Type: SObjectType

Return Value

Type: void

getTaxMethod()

Returns the type of tax method, which is POST or GET.

Signature

```
global static void setTaxMethod()
```

Parameters

taxMethod

Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

setSObjectListoflds(listOfSobjectIds)

Sets the list of IDs for objects that require tax calculation.

Signature

```
global static Void setSObjectListofIds(List<Id> listOfSobjectIds)
```

Parameters

```
listOfSobjectIds
Type: List<|d>
```

Return Value

Type: Void

setSObjectID(sObjectId)

Sets the ID of a single object that requires tax calculation., if any.

Signature

```
global static void setSObjectID(Id sObjectId)
```

Parameters

s0bjectId

Type: Id

Return Value

Type: void

setLegalEntityReferences(legalEntityReference)

Sets the legal entity for the tax treatment. For example, a company can create legal entities to represent their different branches.

Signature

```
global static void setLegalEntityReferences(String legalEntityReference)
```

Parameters

legalEntityReference

Type: String

Unique identification number of the legal entity.

Return Value

Type: void

setSObjectType(sObjectTypeInstance)

Sets the object type to InvoiceLine, DebitNoteLine, CreditNoteLine, or OrderProduct object.

Signature

```
global static void setSObjectType(SObjectType sObjectTypeInstance)
```

Parameters

sObjectTypeInstance

Type: SObjectType

Return Value

Type: void

setTaxMethod(taxMethod)

Sets the method to POST or GET.

Signature

global static void setTaxMethod(String taxMethod)

Parameters

taxMethod

Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

setIsCommitOnGetTax(isCommitOnGetTax)

Indicates to external tax providers whether to commit tax.

Usage

If the **Automatically Post Invoices** checkbox is selected on the Invoice Scheduler, tax providers examine the isCommitOnGetTax parameter to commit the tax.

The isCommitOnGetTax parameter value is configured within the Taxparameter instance and transmitted to the external tax provider implementation.

Signature

global static Void setIsCommitOnGetTax(Boolean isCommitOnGetTax)

Parameters

isCommitOnGetTax

Type: Boolean

Indicates to external tax providers whether to commit tax on the Get Tax method (true) or not (false).

Return Value

Type: Void

TaxResults Class

Contains a list of setter methods to populate the data returned from a tax callout. The data is passed back to Salesforce Billing from the tax connector.

Namespace

blng

TaxResults Methods

TaxResults Methods

The following are methods for TaxResults.

getId()

Returns the ID of the entity where tax was calculated.

getRate()

Returns the tax rate.

getSummary()

Returns the summary that contains the error message.

getTax()

Returns the tax amount.

isSuccess

Returns true if tax calculation was successful or false if tax calculation fails.

setRate(rate)

Sets the tax rate to the percentage specified by the parameter.

setTax(tax)

Sets the tax amount.

setIsSuccess(isSuccess)

Sets isSuccess to true if tax calculation was successful, otherwise sets isSuccess to false.

setId(id)

Sets the ID of the entity where tax was calculated.

setSummary(summary)

If tax isn't calculated successfully, assign error message to the summary.

getId()

Returns the ID of the entity where tax was calculated.

Signature

```
global static void getId()
```

Parameters

id

Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

getRate()

Returns the tax rate.

Signature

```
global static void getRate()
```

```
Parameters
rate
   Type: Decimal
Return Value
Type: void
getSummary()
Returns the summary that contains the error message.
Signature
global static void getSummary()
Parameters
summary
   Type: String
Return Value
Type: void
getTax()
Returns the tax amount.
Signature
global static void getTax()
Parameters
tax
   Type: Decimal
Return Value
Type: void
isSuccess
Returns true if tax calculation was successful or false if tax calculation fails.
Signature
global static void isSuccess()
```

```
Parameters
isSuccess
   Type: Boolean
Return Value
Type: void
setRate(rate)
Sets the tax rate to the percentage specified by the parameter.
Signature
global static void setRate(Decimal rate)
Parameters
rate
   Type: Decimal
Return Value
Type: void
setTax(tax)
Sets the tax amount.
Signature
global static void setTax(Decimal tax)
Parameters
tax
   Type: Decimal
   Assigns tax.
Return Value
Type: void
setIsSuccess(isSuccess)
Sets isSuccess to true if tax calculation was successful, otherwise sets isSuccess to false.
Signature
global static void setIsSuccess(Boolean isSuccess)
```

```
Parameters

isSuccess
Type: Boolean

Return Value

Type: void

setId(id)

Sets the ID of the entity where tax was calculated.

Signature
global static void setId(String id)

Parameters

id

Type: String

In case of GET Tax Call: Assign Invoiceline/Orderproduct Id
In case of Post/Cancel Tax Call: Assign Invoice Id
```

Return Value

Type: void

setSummary(summary)

If tax isn't calculated successfully, assign error message to the summary.

```
Signature
```

```
global static void setSummary(String summary)
```

Parameters

summary

Type: String

Return Value

Type: void

TaxEngines Interface

Your tax engine implements this interface. It contains methods for calculating tax, clearing in-memory entities from the previous call, and clearing legal references from the previous call.

Namespace

blng

TaxEngines Methods

Learn more about the methods available with the TaxEngines interface.

TaxEngines Methods

Learn more about the methods available with the TaxEngines interface.

The TaxEngines interface includes these methods.

resetSObjectListoflds()

Sets the in-memory IDs, such as credit note IDs, debit note IDs, to null.

resetLegalEntityReferences()

Sets the in-memory list of legal entities to null.

calculateTax(taxParametersInstance)

Returns the calculated tax for the specified taxParametersInstance parameter.

resetSObjectListoflds()

Sets the in-memory IDs, such as credit note IDs, debit note IDs, to null.

Signature

```
global static Void resetSObjectListofIds()
```

Return Value

Type: Void

resetLegalEntityReferences()

Sets the in-memory list of legal entities to null.

Signature

```
global static Void resetLegalEntityReferences()
```

Return Value

Type: Void

calculateTax(taxParametersInstance)

Returns the calculated tax for the specified taxParametersInstance parameter.

Signature

```
global static Map<Id, TaxResults> calculateTax(TaxParameters taxParametersInstance)
```

Parameters

taxParametersInstance

Type: TaxParameters

The taxParametersInstance parameter is populated based on the process that uses tax calculation. These examples show the sample values for each process.

Order is created

```
TaxParameters:[
  isCommitOnGetTax=false,
  isStandardFromBatch=false,
  legalEntityReference=801050000000i1MqAAI,
  listOfSObjectIds=(),
  listOfSObjects=(),
  mapOfSObjectByUniqueId={},
  mapOfTaxResultsById={},
  mapOfTaxTreatmentById={},
  sObjectId=null,
  sObjectTypeInstance=OrderItem,
  sobjectInstance=null,
  taxMethod=null
]
```

Bill Now or Invoice is created

```
TaxParameters:[
  isCommitOnGetTax=false,
  isStandardFromBatch=false,
  legalEntityReference=a2305000000BKIoAAO,
  listOfSObjectIds=(),
  listOfSObjects=(),
  mapOfSObjectByUniqueId={},
  mapOfTaxResultsById={},
  mapOfTaxTreatmentById={},
  sObjectId=null,
  sObjectInstance=blng__InvoiceLine__c,
  sobjectInstance=null,
  taxMethod=null
]
```

Invoice is manually posted

```
TaxParameters:[
isCommitOnGetTax=false,
isStandardFromBatch=false,
legalEntityReference=null,
listOfSObjectIds=(a2305000000BKIoAAO),
listOfSObjects=(),
mapOfSObjectByUniqueId={},
mapOfTaxResultsById={},
mapOfTaxTreatmentById={},
```

```
sObjectId=null,
sObjectTypeInstance=blng__Invoice__c,
sobjectInstance=null,
taxMethod=postTax
]
```

Return Value

Type: Map<Id,TaxResults>

Revenue Recognition Service Developer Guide

Salesforce Billing Revenue Recognition API lets you run revenue recognition for any Salesforce object in response to triggers, process builders, and REST API calls. The service uses Salesforce Billing revenue recognition rules, treatments, and distribution methods to create a revenue schedule and transaction hierarchy.

Get Started with the Revenue Recognition Service

Review the Revenue Recognition Service's input and output parameters, and general guidelines.

Revenue Recognition Service Setup

Prepare the Revenue Recognition Service by configuring several revenue fields in Salesforce Billing.

Revenue Recognition Service Use Cases

Use process builders, APEX triggers, or REST API to call the Revenue Recognition Service.

Get Started with the Revenue Recognition Service

Review the Revenue Recognition Service's input and output parameters, and general guidelines.

The Revenue Recognition service is helpful when you want to forecast revenue on objects other than invoice lines or order products. For example, you can forecast revenue on quote lines once they're approved, or on a contract after it's activated. You can access the service by calling the blng.recognizeRevenue method through process builders, workflow rules, REST API, and APEX triggers.

The service takes several input parameters and passes them to Salesforce Billing. You can define these parameters based on equivalent fields on your source object. For example, if you want to recognize revenue after a contract is activated, you could set the startDate parameter to the contract's Activated Date field, and the revenueAmount parameter to the List Amount field from the contract's originating quote.

If the service processes all parameters successfully, it returns parameters indicating the success and creates a revenue schedule with revenue transactions. If there are any errors, the service returns parameters for the number and types of errors encountered.



Tip: By default, the Revenue Recognition Service API doesn't return success messages after successfully creating a revenue schedule and its transcations. We recommend building automation to confirm that your revenue schedule and revenue transactions were created successfully.

Revenue Recognition Service Input Parameters

Name	Туре	Required	Definition
currencyIsoCode	String	No	Required for multicurrency orgs. Defines the currency used in revenue schedules made from this process builder. If not defined in a single-currency org, the revenue recognition service uses the org's default currency.
endDate	Date	Required only for daily or monthly revenue recognition	The date when the revenue recognition period ends.
legalEntityId	ID	No	Required for orgs that use legal entities. Used to determine the correct revenue recognition treatments to use for a revenue recognition rule. [] Important: If your org
			uses legal entities, and you're using revenue recognition API on an object that doesn't have a Legal Entity field, you must create a custom legal entity field and enter its value on your own, or look up the value from a related record.
revenueAmount	Decimal	Yes	The amount that the revenue recognition service uses to determine available, deferred, recognized, and total revenue based on revenue recognition rules. Users must ensure that the amount value they pass to revenue recognition service has the currency as the currency IsoCode field.
revenueRecognitionRuleId	ID	Yes	The service applies this revenue recognition rule, then applies the rule's appropriate revenue recognition treatment.
source	ID	Yes	ID of the entity that the revenue recognition service evaluates for

Name	Туре	Required	Definition
			revenue recognition or forecasting.
			When you configure your revenue recognition service setup, create a lookup field on the revenue schedule object. This field stores the ID of the record where you're recognizing revenue. When you call the revenue recognition service, pass the source record's ID to the lookup field.
sourceFieldName	String	Yes	ID of the source record that's displayed in the revenue schedule.
startDate	Date	Yes	The date that the revenue recognition period begins. When the revenue distribution method is set to full recognition, the revenue recognition service uses the start date for full recognition and ignores the end date.

Revenue Recognition Service Output Parameters

Name	Туре	Definition
jobId	ID	ID of the APEX job that passed the input parameters to the service.
inputValidationStatus	String	A list of input parameters that encountered validation errors.
totalNumberOfInputsWithErrors	Integer	The number of input parameters that the service couldn't use due to errors (for example, a missing startDate, or a revenueAmount with a non-numeric character).
totalNumberOfInputsWithoutErrors	Integer	The number of input parameters that were successfully passed to the service.

Revenue Recognition Service Setup

Prepare the Revenue Recognition Service by configuring several revenue fields in Salesforce Billing.

Your admins may already have configured objects and fields in your org for use with the revenue recognition service. If they haven't, read the following information.

To successfully pass a revenue recognition rule to the revenue recognition service, the rule's revenue distribution methods and revenue recognition treatments require several picklist fields to have a value of Other. This value indicates that Salesforce Billing should override the default revenue recognition process and use parameters passed to the APEX service instead. When you're configuring a revenue recognition rule for use with the service, make sure that the following fields have a value of Other.

Revenue Distribution Method

Full Recognition Date

Revenue Term End Date (Needed only for daily or monthly recognition)

Revenue Term Start Date

Type

Revenue Recognition Treatment

Revenue Schedule Creation Action

Revenue Schedule Amount



Note: If you're upgrading to Salesforce Billing Spring '20 from an earlier version, add *Other* as a picklist value to each of these fields before using the service.

Revenue Recognition Service Use Cases

Use process builders, APEX triggers, or REST API to call the Revenue Recognition Service.

Using the Revenue Recognition Service With Process Builders

Process builders provide a convenient way to call the revenue recognition service. After you've defined your Revenue Recognition class, your process builder can call the service while passing it key revenue information from the object where you want to recognize revenue.

Calling the Revenue Recognition Service with APEX Triggers

You can call the Revenue Recognition service with a custom APEX trigger.

Revenue Recognition REST API

Use REST API to call invocable methods from the Revenue Recognition Apex class.

Using the Revenue Recognition Service With Process Builders

Process builders provide a convenient way to call the revenue recognition service. After you've defined your Revenue Recognition class, your process builder can call the service while passing it key revenue information from the object where you want to recognize revenue.

When you use a process builder to trigger the revenue recognition process, configure your conditions carefully so you don't accidentally create multiple revenue schedules at once for the same record. For example, if you want to recognize revenue when a contract's status changes to Activated and your trigger condition checks only that the payment's status equals Posted, any value change on an activated contract will trigger your process. Instead, use conditions that trigger the process only when a contract's status *changes* to Activated.

Your process builder calls the blng.recognizeRevenue APEX method, which accepts the input parameters defined in Revenue Recognition Service Developer Guide. Take Remember, your RevenueRecognitionInputs class must at least define a Revenue Amount, Revenue Recognition Rule ID, Start Date, ID Source, and Source Field name. Your builder's Apex variables have to pass at least these five variables to successfully invoke the Revenue Recognition class, and any optional variables that you need.

We recommend defining Apex variables that inherit the value of an equivalent field. When you map a field in the process builder, we recommend using a formula field such as VALUE (TEXT (Object. [Field])). Here are a few examples.



Note: Currently, currency fields aren't supported as invocable variables, so we use decimals to define the revenueAmount.

Object	Apex Variable Type	Object Field	Apex Variable Value
Quote Line	Formula	SBQQListTotalc	VALFORT (1990 Quteline of 1990 listical c
Order	Formula	TotalPrice	VAUE (Text ([Ordenten] .Total Price))
Contract	Formula	Amount	VALLE (Text (Contract_c.Amount))

Here are a few ways you can define a value for Start Date.

Object	Apex Variable Type	Object Field	Apex Variable Value
Quote Line	Date	SBQQStartDatec	[SOO QuoteLine c].SOO StartDate c
Order	Date	Effective-Date	[OrderIten] .Order.Effective-Date
Contract	Date	ActivatedDate	Contract.ActivatedDate



Example: In this example, we want a process builder that recognizes quote line revenue after a quote is approved.

Criteria

Executes when any of the conditions are met.

Conditions

Field	Operator	Туре	Picklist
MO Oddied MO Ode 1990 Sats C	Equals	Picklist	Approved

APEX Variables

Apex Class: Recognize Revenue

Field	Туре	Value
startDate	Date	[SEQ_QoteLine_c].SEQ_StartDate_c
sourceFieldName	String	SBQQ_Quote_Line_c
source	Field Reference	[SBQQQuoteLinec].Id
revenueAmount	Formula	VALE(Ext([SEQ Qutdire of SEQ listItal of)
revenueRecognitionRuleId	Field Reference	(MO) Quidie d. MO) Route ridg Remakagition le rid
endDate	Date	[SBQQ_QuoteLine_c].SBQQ_EndDate_c

Field	Туре	Value
LegalEntityID	Field Reference	[SBQQ_QuoteLine_c].legalEntity_c
		Note: Use a custom quote line field called Legal Entity that looks up to the same legal entity that you plan to use for your order product.

Example: In this example, we want a process builder that forecasts revenue when a contract is activated. We've defined a custom blng__Contract__c field on the revenue schedule to store the contract's ID value for sourceFieldName. Instead of using a variable from the source entity for our end date, we've defined a static date.

Criteria

Executes when all of the conditions are met.

Conditions

Field	Operator	Туре	Picklist
Contract	Is changed	Boolean	True
Contract	Equals	Picklist	Posted

APEX Variables

Apex Class: Recognize Revenue

Field	Туре	Value
startDate	Date	Contract.ActivatedDate
sourceFieldName	String	blngContractc
source	Field Reference	Contract.Id
revenueAmount	Formula	VALUE (Text (Contract.blng_Amount_c))
revenueRecognitionRuleId	Field Reference	MO Oddie d.MO Robt 1919 Rendengitorie r.D
endDate	Date	12/31/2019

Example: In this example, we want a process builder that forecasts order product revenue after an order product is activated.

Criteria

Executes when all of the conditions are met.

Conditions

Field	Operator	Туре	Picklist
[OrderItem].SBQQ_Status_c	Is changed	Boolean	True
[OrderItem].SBQQ_Status_c	Equals	Picklist	Activated

APEX Variables

Apex Class: Recognize Revenue

Field	Туре	Value
startDate	Date	[OrderItem].Order.Effective-Date
sourceFieldName	String	blngOrderProductc
source	Field Reference	[OrderItem].Id
revenueAmount	Formula	[OrderItem].Id
revenueRecognitionRuleId	Field Reference	(Odriter) . Brold 2. birg Reme Recgrition Rile_r. id
endDate	Date	[OrderItem].Order.EndDate

Calling the Revenue Recognition Service with APEX Triggers

You can call the Revenue Recognition service with a custom APEX trigger.

For a list of input and output parameters, see Revenue Recognition Service Developer Guide.



Example: In this example, we want to create a revenue schedule for an invoice line after its status changes to Posted. The org uses legal entities, so we included the legal entity in an input.

Important: Always review field validations and mapping to ensure you can trigger your process without any errors.

```
//In this example, we want to create a revenue schedule for an invoice line after its
status changes to Posted.
//The example uses the InvoiceLine object in the billing package, where the API name
is blng InvoiceLine c.
//For your specific use case, replace blng InvoiceLine c with the desired API name
object.
trigger GenerateRevenueOnInvoiceLineActivation on blng InvoiceLine c (before insert)
    blng__InvoiceLine__c[] newInvoiceLine = Trigger.new;
   blng__InvoiceLine__c[] oldInvoiceLine = Trigger.old;
   blng.RevenueRecognitionInput[] inputs = new List<br/>blng.RevenueRecognitionInput>();
```

```
Integer i = 0;
    for (blng InvoiceLine c newInvoiceLine : newInvoiceLine) {
        if (newInvoiceLine.blng InvoiceLineStatus c !=
oldInvoiceLine[i].blng InvoiceLineStatus c &&
           newInvoiceLine.blng InvoiceLineStatus c == 'Posted') {
           blng.RevenueRecognitionInput input = new blng.RevenueRecognitionInput();
           input.source = newInvoiceLine.ID;
            input.sourceFieldName = 'InvoiceLine';
            input.revenueAmount = newInvoiceLine.blng Balance c;
            input.startDate = newInvoiceLine.blng StartDate c;
            input.endDate = (Date.today()).addMonths(2);
           input.revenueRecognitionRuleId =
newInvoiceLine.blng Product r.blng RevenueRecognitionRule c;
           input.legalEntityId = newInvoiceLine.blng LegalEntity c;
           inputs.add(input);
        }
        i++;
    }
    if (inputs != null && inputs.size() > 0) {
        List<br/>blng.RevenueRecognitionResponse> response =
blng.RevenueRecognition.recognizeRevenue(inputs);
   }
```

Revenue Recognition REST API

Use REST API to call invocable methods from the Revenue Recognition Apex class.

This object is available in API version 48.0 and later.

Supported REST HTTP Methods

URI

actions/custom/apex/blng RevenueRecognition

Formats

JSON, XML

HTTP Methods

POST

Authentication

Bearer Token

Parameters

Input	Details
currencyIsoCode	Type String

Input	Details
	Description Required only for multicurrency orgs. Defines the currency used in revenue schedules made from this process builder. If not defined, in a single-currency org, the revenue recognition service uses the org's default currency.
legalEntityID	Type ID
	Description Required for orgs that use legal entities. Used to determine the correct revenue recognition treatments to use for a revenue recognition rule.
	(!) Important: If your org uses legal entities, and you're using revenue recognition API on an object that doesn't have a Legal Entity field, you must create a custom legal entity field and enter its value on your own or look up the value from a related record.
revenueAmount	Type Decimal
	Description The amount that the revenue recognition service uses to determine available, deferred, recognized, and total revenue based on revenue recognition rules. Users must ensure that the amount value they pass to revenue recognition service has the currency as the currencylsoCode field. Required.
revenueRecognitionRuleId	Type ID
	Description The service applies this revenue recognition rule, then applies the rule's appropriate revenue recognition treatment. Required.
source	Type ID
	Description ID of the entity that the revenue recognition service evaluates for revenue recognition or forecasting. Required.
sourceFieldName	Type String
	Description This field appears on the revenue schedule and stores a lookup to the source record's ID. Required.
startDate	Type Date

Input	Details
	Description
	The date that the revenue recognition period begins. When the revenue distribution method is set to full recognition, the revenue recognition service uses the start date for full recognition and ignores the end date. Required.
endDate	Туре
	Date
	Description
	The date when the revenue recognition period ends. Required only for monthly or daily recognition.

Response Body

Name	Туре	Definition
jobId	ID	The ID of the APEX job that sent your input parameters to the revenue recognition service.
inputValidationStatus	String	A list of input parameters that encountered validation errors.
totalNumberOfInputsWithErrors	Integer	The number of input parameters that the revenue recognition service couldn't use due to errors (for example, a missing startDate, or a revenueAmount with a non-numeric character).
totalNumberOfInputsWithoutErrors	Integer	The number of input parameters that were successfully passed to the revenue recognition service.

Samples

Sample Request Body

This payload passes a payment record to the Revenue Recognition Service. The service attempts to create a revenue schedule based off the revenue amount of \$12000 and the defined revenue recognition rule.

```
"sourceFieldname":"blng__Contract__c"
}
]
```

Sample Response Body

In this case, we receive a response with one error because the sample payload didn't include a startDate variable.

Hosted Card Payments Lightning Component

The force:cardPayment (Hosted Card Payments) component provides a user interface in a hosted payment page that uses Salesforce Billing to collect card payment information, make a payment, or perform both actions. Salesforce stores and processes the customer card information under PCI-compliant standards. You can host the payment page in an Experience Cloud site Page or Lightning Page.

EDITIONS

Available in: Salesforce Billing Winter '20 and later

To use this component, you must also have Salesforce Billing installed in your org. For more information, see Install Salesforce Billing in Salesforce Help.

The user interface contains a form that takes customer credit card and payment details, such as cardholder name and address, and a button for submitting them. You can customize the card component to hide fields, make fields required, and change the labels of fields and buttons. These customizations affect what admins see when they add the component to their Experience Cloud site or Lightning Pages, and what end customers see when they make a payment using your component. For example, in this component, we've defined the following customizations.

- The Expiration Month is required
- The Expiration Year is required
- The Email field is hidden
- The first address line has a label of "Street"
- The Pay Button's label has been changed to Save Card.

```
<force:CardPayment
   paymentProvider = "{!v.paymentProvider}"
   transactionType = "{!v.transactionType}"</pre>
```

```
transactionParams = "{!v.transactionParams}"
expiryMonthRequired = "true"
expiryYearRequired = "true"
hideEmail = "true"
addressLine1Label = "Street"
payButtonLabel="Save Card"/>
```

Once you've configured your component, you can embed it in a wrapper component that's available in Experience Builder. Here's a sample wrapper component with the cardPayment component embedded.

```
<aura:component>
   <aura:handler name="paymentTransactionCompleted"</pre>
              event="force:paymentTransactionCompleted"
              action="{!c.handleTransactionResponse}"/>
   <aura:attribute name="accountId" type="String" default="abcd"</pre>
        description="Account to which the transaction details are related"/>
    <aura:attribute name="gatewayId" type="String" default="1234"</pre>
        description="Gateway to be used for the transaction"/>
    <aura:attribute name="amount" type="Decimal" default="10"</pre>
        description="amount to be charged for the transaction"/>
    <aura:attribute name="paymentProvider" type="String" default='SalesforceBilling'</pre>
        description="Payments provider for this component"/>
    <aura:attribute name="transactionType" type="String" default='PaymentSale'</pre>
        description="Transaction to be done after submitting the button"/>
    <aura:attribute name="transactionParams" type="Object"</pre>
        description="Contains details about account id and gateway id to use"/>
    <aura:handler name="init" value="{!this}" action="{!c.doInit}"/>
    <force:cardPayment
          paymentProvider = "{!v.paymentProvider}"
          transactionType = "{!v.transactionType}"
          transactionParams = "{!v.transactionParams}"
          expiryMonthRequired = "true"
          expiryYearRequired = "true"
          hideEmail = "true"
          addressLine1Label = "Street"
          payButtonLabel="Save Card"/>
</aura:component>
```

You must handle the force:paymentTransactionCompleted event, which is fired after the transaction is completed.

```
handleTransactionResponse : function(cmp, event, helper) {
  var response = event.getParam("response");
  if(response.isSuccess) {
```

```
alert("isSuccess : " + response.isSuccess);
}
```

You can also add attributes to a design resource so that your admins have the option of hiding fields, making fields required, and changing labels. When your design resource is active, admins can select the payment component in Experience Builder to show a properties pane with checkboxes or text boxes for each of the attributes. Save your design resource as a .design file in the same directory as your wrapper component. For example, if you want to present your five customized attributes for your admins to select or deselect from the properties pane, add the following Design section.

Response Formats

Success

During a successful response, isSuccess becomes true. If transactionType had a value of PaymentSale, salesforceResponse response contains paymentId, paymentMethodId, and paymentTransactionId. If transactionType had a value of SavePaymentCard, salesforceResponse contains only paymentMethodId. The attributes of gatewayResponse varies based on the gateway. This example shows a Success response for a PaymentSale transaction and all possible attributes for gatewayResponse.

```
"isSuccess" : true,
"salesforceResponse" : {
    "paymentId" : "paymentId",
    "paymentMethodId" : "paymentMethodId",
    "paymentTransactionId" : "paymentTransactionId"
},

"gatewayResponse": {
    "message": "mes",
    "responseCodeMessage": "rcm",
    "responseMessage": "rm",
    "responseCode": "rc",
    "responseStatus": "rs"
}
```

Failure in the gateway

```
{
"isSuccess" : false,
```

```
"salesforceResponse" : {
    "paymentTransactionId" : "paymentTransactionId"
},

"gatewayResponse": {
    "message": "mes",
    "responseCodeMessage": "rcm",
    "responseMessage": "rm",
    "responseCode": "rc",
    "responseStatus": "rs"
}
```

Failure Internally

```
"isSuccess": false,
"errorDetails": {
    "message": "message"
    }
}
```

Security Considerations and PCI Compliance

When end users are done entering their credit card information, they click the payment button so that the component sends the information to the payment gateway. Based on how you've configured your component, the gateway either tokenizes the card information and sends it back to the component, or the gateway tokenizes the card information, processes it for payment, and sends the results to the component.

Salesforce Billing uses security guardrails to ensure that end users aren't charged more than once if they accidentally click the Pay Now button multiple times, or in the event of fraudulent activity. After the component sends a request to the payment gateway, it generates a nonce associated with that specific request. Salesforce Billing won't send another request unless the page is refreshed and the Hosted Card Payments component is re-rendered. The component validates the nonce before sending payment information to the gateway. If the nonce is valid, the component removes the nonce and sends the request to the gateway.

You can also use Javascript controllers to manage error handling and response handling. Here's a sample Javascript controller that uses the handler that we introduced earlier.

```
doInit : function(component, event, helper) {
    var transactionParams = {};
    transactionParams.accountId = component.get("v.accountId");
    transactionParams.gatewayId = component.get("v.gatewayId");
    transactionParams.amount = component.get("v.amount");

    component.set("v.transactionParams", transactionParams);
},

handleTransactionResponse : function(cmp, event, helper) {
    var response = event.getParam("response");
    if(response.isSuccess) {
```

```
alert("isSuccess : " + response.isSuccess);
}
}
```

Attributes for the Card Hosted Payments Component

Review the attributes for the Card Hosted Payments component.

Guidelines for the Hosted Card Payments Lightning Component

When you set up the wrapper and design for your hosted payment component, consider important guidelines.

HostedPaymentPageTransactionAPI Class

Global API Apex class for Salesforce Billing. Contains methods that customers can call to save a credit card with tokenization or make a transaction using a new credit card.

Attributes for the Card Hosted Payments Component

Review the attributes for the Card Hosted Payments component.

All attributes have a Default value of False and Access value of Global.

Name	Туре	Description
paymentProvider	String	Defines the source for processing payments. The cardPaymentMethod component requires that this attribute has a value of SalesforceBilling.
transactionType	String	The action that the component performs when users select the component's button. Accepts values of SavePaymentCard or PaymentSale.
transactionParams	Object	Accepts values of amount, accountld, and gatewayld.
emailRequired	Boolean	Specifies whether the Email field is required.
cardHolderNameRequired	Boolean	Specifies whether the Card Holder Name field is required.
cardTypeRequired	Boolean	Specifies whether the Card Type field is required.
expiryMonthRequired	Boolean	Specifies whether the Expiration Month field is required.

EDITIONS

Available in: Salesforce Billing Winter '20 and later

Name	Туре	Description
expiryYearRequired	Boolean	Specifies whether the Expiration Year field is required.
cvvRequired	Boolean	Specifies whether the CVV field is required.
firstNameRequired	Boolean	Specifies whether the First Name field is required.
lastNameRequired	Boolean	Specifies whether the Last Name field is required.
addressLine1Required	Boolean	Specifies whether the Address Line 1 field is required.
addressLine2Required	Boolean	Specifies whether the Address Line 2 field is required.
cityRequired	Boolean	Specifies whether the City field is required.
stateRequired	Boolean	Specifies whether the State field is required.
countryRequired	Boolean	Specifies whether the Country field is required.
postalCodeRequired	Boolean	Specifies whether the Postal Code field is required.
hideCardHolderName	Boolean	Specifies whether the Cardholder Name field is hidden.
hideCardType	Boolean	Specifies whether the Card Type field is hidden.
hideExpiryMonth	Boolean	Specifies whether the Expiration Month field is hidden.
hideExpiryYear	Boolean	Specifies whether the Expiration Year field is hidden.
hideCvv	Boolean	Specifies whether the CVV field is hidden.
hideSaveForFuture	Boolean	Specifies whether the Save for Future field is hidden.
hideAutoPay	Boolean	Specifies whether the AutoPay field is hidden.
hideFirstName	Boolean	Specifies whether the First Name field is hidden.
hideLastName	Boolean	Specifies whether the Last Name field is hidden.
hideEmail	Boolean	Specifies whether the Email field is hidden.

Name	Туре	Description	
hide Address Line 1	Boolean	Specifies whether the Address Line 1 field is hidden.	
hideAddressLine2	Boolean	Specifies whether the Address Line 2 field is hidden.	
hideCity	Boolean	Specifies whether the City field is hidden.	
hideState	Boolean	Specifies whether the State field is hidden.	
hideCountry	Boolean	Specifies whether the Country field is hidden.	
hidePostalCode	Boolean	Specifies whether the Postal Code field is hidden.	
credit Card Information Label	Boolean	Label for the Credit Card Information section.	
address Information Label	Boolean	Label for the Address Information section.	
payButtonLabel	String	Label for the Pay button.	
card Holder Name Label	String	Label for the cardHolderName field.	
cardTypeLabel	String	Label for the cardType field.	
card Number Label	String	Label for the cardNumber field.	
expiryMonthLabel	String	Label for the expiryMonth field.	
expiryYearLabel	String	Label for the expiryYear field.	
cvvLabel	String	Label for the CVV field.	
saveForFutureLabel	String	Label for the saveForFuture field.	
autoPayLabel	String	Label for the AutoPay field.	
firstNameLabel	String	Label for the firstName field.	
lastNameLAbel	String	Label for the lastName field.	
emailLabel	String	Label for the email field.	
addressLine1Label	String	Label for the addressLine1 field.	
addressLine2Label	String	Label for the addressLine2 field.	
cityLabel	String	Label for the city field.	
stateLabel	String	Label for the state field.	
countryLabel	String	Label for the country field.	
postalCodeLabel	String	Label for the postalCode field.	

Name Type Descriptio		Description
hideAddressSection	String	Specifies whether the address section is hidden.
clearFormData	String	Clears the component's form data.

Guidelines for the Hosted Card Payments Lightning Component

When you set up the wrapper and design for your hosted payment component, consider important quidelines.



Customers can pay only against an account.

• In multicurrency orgs, customers can make payments only in the account's currency. In single-currency orgs, the component uses the org's currency. When handling currency, the component retrieves SavePaymentCard or PaymentSale's currency from the customer's account. It won't accept CurrencyIsoCode as an input parameter.

Available in: Salesforce Billing Winter '20 and later

- Component field positions can't be changed.
- The component doesn't support custom fields.
- To prevent fraudulent activity, we recommend developing guardrails around the users that can access your payments page. We also recommend that your payments page is not the first page in your Experience Cloud site or Lightning page.

HostedPaymentPageTransactionAPI Class

Global API Apex class for Salesforce Billing. Contains methods that customers can call to save a credit card with tokenization or make a transaction using a new credit card.

Namespace

blng

Usage

The HostedPaymentPageTransactionAPI class contains the chargeTransaction method, which allows users to make a transaction using a new credit card, and the savePaymentMethod method, which allows users to save a credit card with tokenization.

Inputs

Table 7: Address Inputs

Name	Туре	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
addressLine1	String	First line in the address of the user making the payment.	Optional	48.0
addressLine2	String	Second line in the address of the user making the payment.	Optional	48.0

Name	Туре	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
city	String	City	Optional	48.0
country	String	Country	Optional	48.0
postalCode	String	Postal code	Optional	48.0
state	String	State	Optional	48.0

Name	Туре	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
cardHolderName	s String	Full name of the card holder.	Required	48.0
cardNumber	String	Number of the credit card.	Required	48.0
cardType	String	Card network type. Valid values are: • AmericanExpress • Discover • MasterCard • Visa	Required	48.0
CVV	String	CW	Required	48.0
expiryMonth	Integer	Card expiration month.	Required	48.0
expiryYear	Integer	Card expiration year.	Required	48.0

Table 9: PaymentMethod Inputs

Name	Туре	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
address	String	Address of the payment method holder.	Required	48.0
autopay	Boolean	Defines whether Salesforce Billing saves a record of the payment method to the customer's account for use in future payment runs. One account can have only one payment method with autopay enabled.	Optional	48.0
email	String	Email of the payment method holder.	Optional	48.0
firstName	String	First name of the payment method holder.	Required	48.0
lastName	String	Last name of the payment method holder.	Required	48.0
cardPaymentMethod	cardPaymentMethod	Card details for the payment method.	Required	48.0

Name	Туре	Description	Required or Optional	Available Version
paymentType	String	Type of payment method. Valid values are: • Credit Card	Required	48.0
saveForFuture	Boolean	Indicates whether Salesforce saves a record of the payment method for future use.	Optional	48.0

HostedPaymentPageTransactionAPI Methods

HostedPaymentPageTransactionAPI Methods

The following are methods for HostedPaymentPageTransactionAPI.

chargeTransaction(chargeRequest)

Use this method to charge the desired amount from the buyer's card.

savePaymentMethod(paymentMethodReguest)

Use this method to save a payment method. Currently supports saving only credit cards.

chargeTransaction(chargeRequest)

Use this method to charge the desired amount from the buyer's card.

Signature

global static String chargeTransaction(String chargeRequest)

Parameters

chargeRequest

Type: String

Represents a charge request made to the payment gateway.

Return Value

Type: String

Represents a charge transaction response.

Example

Example format for a charge request input.

```
{
"accountId": "0018A00000QcPDpQAN",
"gatewayId": "a1x8A000000ZG2",
"amount": 10,
```

```
"paymentMethod": {
     "firstName": "Muneer Ahmed",
     "lastName": "Shaik",
     "email": "mas@sf.com",
      "saveForFuture": true,
     "autoPay": true,
      "paymentType": "Credit Card",
      "address": {
          "addressLine1": "Address 1",
          "addressLine2": "Address 2",
          "city": "SF",
          "state": "CA",
          "country": "United States",
          "postalCode": "41111"
      },
      "cardPaymentMethod": {
          "cardHolderName": "Muneer Ahmed Shaik",
          "cardType": "Visa",
          "cardNumber": "41111111111111",
          "cvv": "111",
          "expiryMonth": "2",
          "expiryYear": "2021"
      }
 }
}
```

savePaymentMethod(paymentMethodRequest)

Use this method to save a payment method. Currently supports saving only credit cards.

Signature

global static String savePaymentMethod(String paymentMethodRequest)

Parameters

payment Method Request

Type: String

Represents a request to save a payment method.

Return Value

Type: String

Represents a save payment method response.

Example

Example format for a save payment method request input.

```
{
"accountId": "0018A00000QcPDpQAN",
```

```
"gatewayId": "a1x8A000000ZG2",
"paymentMethod": {
    "firstName": "Muneer Ahmed",
    "lastName": "Shaik",
    "email": "mas@sf.com",
    "paymentType": "Credit Card",
    "address": {
        "addressLine1": "Address 1",
        "addressLine2": "Address 2",
        "city": "SF",
        "state": "CA",
        "country": "United States",
        "postalCode": "41111"
    },
    "cardPaymentMethod": {
        "cardHolderName": "Muneer Ahmed Shaik",
        "cardType": "Visa",
        "cardNumber": "41111111111111",
        "cvv": "111",
        "expiryMonth": "2",
        "expiryYear": "2021"
    }
}
```

REST API for Converting Invoice Lines with Negative Balances

Use the REST API service blng__NegativeInvoiceToCreditNoteAction to evaluate invoices in bulk and create credit notes for each invoice containing invoice lines with negative balances.

This object is available in API version 48.0 and later.

Supported REST HTTP Methods

URI

/services/data/XX.X/actions/custom/apex/blng NegativeInvoiceToCreditNoteAction

Formats

JSON, XML

HTTP Methods

POST

Authentication

Authorization: Bearer token

Parameters

Parameter	Description
invoiceId	Type ID
	Description The REST service evaluates this invoice for invoice lines with a negative balance. For each invoice, it creates a credit note containing one credit note line for each negative invoice line, unless an error occurs during credit note line creation. If even one of the -ve invoice line conversions errors out, all of them fail. No partial conversion can occur.
	Each credit note line has a balance that's the positive equivalent of the corresponding negative invoice line. The credit note lines are unallocated, so users must manually allocate them as needed.

Response Body

Parameter	Description	
invoiceId	Type String	
	Description The invoice that the REST service evaluated.	
isSuccess	Type Boolean	
	Description Indicates whether the invoice was successfully evaluated (True) or could not be evaluated (False).	
errorMessage	Type String	
	Description Error message indicating why the REST service couldn't convert any negative invoice lines on the provided invoice. For example, the invoice did not have any negative invoice lines.	

Samples

Sample Request Body

This payload passes two invoice IDs to the negative invoice line conversion service.

```
{
"inputs":[
```

```
{
    "invoiceId":"aloS0000001NEixIAG"
},
{
    "invoiceId":"aloS0000001NEixIAE"
}
]
```

Sample Response Body

In this case, we receive a response with one error because the sample payload contained an invoice that didn't have any negative invoice lines.

```
{
        "actionName" : "blng NegativeInvoiceToCreditNoteAction",
        "errors" : null,
        "isSuccess" : true,
        "outputValues" : {
            "errorMessage" : "Null"
            "invoiceId" : "aloS0000001NEixIAG"
            "isSuccess" : "true"
        }
    }
 {
        "actionName" : "blng_NegativeInvoiceToCreditNoteAction",
        "errors" : null,
        "isSuccess" : true,
        "outputValues" : {
            "errorMessage" : "The invoice does not have any negative invoice lines."
            "invoiceId" : "aloS0000001NEixIAE"
            "isSuccess" : "false"
        }
]
```

Set Up Standalone Orders with API

Manage your orders and order products in Salesforce and Salesforce Billing without first creating a CPQ quote. We call this type of order a standalone order. They're useful if you manage your quotes and opportunities in an external platform but plan to use Salesforce Billing for order management and billing.

Our standalone orders documentation contains required fields and setup instructions unique to standalone orders and order products. For concepts shared between standard orders and standalone orders, we provide links to the original CPQ and Billing topics.

EDITIONS

Available in: Salesforce Billing Winter '21 and later

You still need the Salesforce CPQ package installed to create standalone orders and order products. Although it doesn't use any Salesforce CPQ features or objects, Salesforce Billing runs internal validations against the CPQ package for several features and workflows.

Create your objects by executing the following series of REST API requests in a single POST request. All object creation requests use the following endpoint, replacing VERSION with your required API version, such as v48.0 or v49.0:

```
/services/data/v48.0/composite
```

Your JSON request must contain a compositeRequest class that defines both the order and the order item. Here's a generic example with null values for the minimum required fields. Configurations for certain billing and order product features may require additional fields and entities.



Example:

```
"allOrNone" : true,
"compositeRequest" : [{
 "method" : "POST",
 "url" : "/services/data/VERSION/sobjects/order",
 "referenceId" : "refOrder",
 "body" : {
     "Status" : "Draft" ,
     "EffectiveDate" : ""
     "Pricebook2Id" : "",
     "AccountId" : ""}
 },{
 "method" : "POST",
 "url" : "/services/data/VERSION/sobjects/OrderItem",
 "referenceId" : "",
 "body" : {
   "Quantity" : "",
   "Unitprice" : "",
   "ServiceDate" : "",
   "EndDate" : "",
   "SBQQ ChargeType c": "",
   "blng BillableUnitPrice c": "",
   "SBQQ__OrderedQuantity__c" : "",
   "SBQQ Status c": "",
   "PricebookEntryId" : "",
   "orderId" : ""
   }
 } ]
```

Required Configurations for Types of Standalone Order Products

Standalone orders require you to provide all the fields that would otherwise come from a CPQ quote. We provide a collection of topics showing all the required fields and their values for standalone order products used in different types of billing features. Certain fields require a specific value, while some are required but vary based on your specific configuration.

Required Configurations for Types of Standalone Order Products

Standalone orders require you to provide all the fields that would otherwise come from a CPQ quote. We provide a collection of topics showing all the required fields and their values for standalone order products used in different types of billing features. Certain fields require a specific value, while some are required but vary based on your specific configuration.



Available in: Salesforce Billing Winter '21 and later

Requirements for Standalone One-Time Order Products

Create a standalone one-time order product through API in Salesforce Lightning or Salesforce Classic.

Requirements for Standalone Termed Recurring Order Products

Create a termed recurring order product through API in Salesforce Lightning or Salesforce Classic.

Requirements for Standalone Evergreen Order Products

Create a monthly evergreen order product through API in Salesforce Lightning or Salesforce Classic.

Requirements for Standalone Invoice Plan Order Products

Create a standalone invoice plan order product through API in Salesforce Lightning or Salesforce Classic.

Requirements for Standalone Amendment Order Products

Create a standalone amendment order product through API in Salesforce Lightning or Salesforce Classic

Requirements for Standalone Cancellation Order Products

Create a standalone cancellation order product through API in Salesforce Lightning or Salesforce Classic.

Requirements for Standalone Order Products with Consumption Schedules

Create a monthly order product with an order product consumption schedule and consumption rates through API in Salesforce Lightning or Salesforce Classic.

Requirements for Standalone Order Products with Price Schedules

Create a standalone order product with price schedules through API in Salesforce Lightning or Salesforce Classic.

Requirements for Standalone One-Time Order Products

Create a standalone one-time order product through API in Salesforce Lightning or Salesforce Classic.



Available in: Salesforce Billing Winter '21 and later

Required Fields

Table 10: Product

Field	Value
Billing Rule	[Required]
Charge Type	One-Time
Revenue Recognition Rule	[Required]
Tax Rule	[Required]

Table 11: Order

Field	Value
Account	[Required]
Effective Date	[Required]
Price Book	[Required]
Status	Draft

Field	Value
Billable Unit Price	Required for invoice runs or Bill Now to pick up the order product for invoicing. We recommend calculating a value based on the formula described in Recurring Billing and Billable Unit Price.
Billing Rule	[Get value from product]
Billing Type	[Required]
Charge Type	One-Time
Charge Type	[Required]
End Date	[Required]
Order	[Required]
Ordered Quantity	[Required]
Price Book Entry	[Required]
Quantity	[Required]
Reference ID	[Required]
Revenue Recognition Rule	[Get value from product]
Service Date	[Required]
Status	Draft
Tax Rule	[Get value from product]

Example:

```
"allOrNone" : true,
"compositeRequest" : [{
 "method" : "POST",
 "url" : "/services/data/v48.0/sobjects/order",
 "referenceId" : "refOrder",
 "body" : {
     "Status" : "Draft" ,
     "EffectiveDate" : "2020-06-16",
     "Pricebook2Id" : "Pricebook records ID",
     "AccountId" : "Account records ID"}
 },{
 "method" : "POST",
 "url" : "/services/data/v48.0/sobjects/OrderItem",
 "referenceId" : "refOrderItem",
 "body" : {
   "Quantity" : "1",
   "Unitprice" : "10",
   "ServiceDate" : "2020-06-16",
   "EndDate" : "2020-06-16",
   "SBQQ__ChargeType__c" : "One-Time",
```

```
"blng_BillableUnitPrice__c": "10",
    "SBQQ__OrderedQuantity__c": "1",
    "SBQQ__Status__c": "Draft",
    "PricebookEntryId": "PricebookEntry records ID",
    "orderId": "@{refOrder.id}"
    }
}]
```

Requirements for Standalone Termed Recurring Order Products

Create a termed recurring order product through API in Salesforce Lightning or Salesforce Classic.

Required Fields

Table 12: Product

Field	Value
Billing Frequency	Monthly, Quarterly, Semiannual, or Annual
Billing Rule	[Required]
Charge Type	Recurring
Revenue Recognition Rule	[Required]
Tax Rule	[Required]

EDITIONS

Available in: Salesforce Billing Winter '21 and later

Table 13: Order

Field	Value
Account	[Required]
Effective Date	[Required]
Price Book	[Required]
Status	Draft

Table 14: Order Product

Field	Value
Billable Unit Price	Required for invoice runs or Bill Now to pick up the order product for invoicing. We recommend calculating a value based on the formula described in Recurring Billing and Billable Unit Price.
Billing Frequency	Monthly
Billing Rule	Get value from product
Billing Type	[Required]

Field	Value
Charge Type	Recurring
Charge Type	[Required]
Default Subscription Term	[Required]
End Date	[Required]
Order	[Required]
Ordered Quantity	[Required]
Price Book Entry	[Required]
Quantity	[Required]
Reference ID	[Required]
Revenue Recognition Rule	Get value from product
Service Date	[Required]
Status	Draft
Tax Rule	Get value from product

Example:

```
"allOrNone" : true,
"compositeRequest" : [{
 "method" : "POST",
 "url" : "/services/data/v48.0/sobjects/order",
 "referenceId" : "refOrder",
 "body" : {
     "Status" : "Draft" ,
     "EffectiveDate" : "2020-06-16",
     "Pricebook2Id" : "Price records ID",
     "AccountId" : "Account records ID"}
 },{
 "method" : "POST",
 "url" : "/services/data/v48.0/sobjects/OrderItem",
 "referenceId" : "refOrderItem",
 "body" : {
   "Quantity" : "1",
   "Unitprice" : "1200",
   "ServiceDate": "2020-06-16",
   "EndDate": "2021-06-15",
   "SBQQ ChargeType__c": "Recurring",
    "SBQQ__BillingType__c" : "Advance",
   "SBQQ BillingFrequency c": "Monthly",
   "blng BillableUnitPrice c": "100",
   "SBQQ OrderedQuantity c": "1",
    "SBQQ DefaultSubscriptionTerm c": "1",
```

```
"SBQQ__Status__c" : "Draft",
    "SBQQ__ContractAction__c" : "New"
    "PricebookEntryId" : "PricebookEntry records ID",
    "orderId" : "@{refOrder.id}"
    }
}]
```

Requirements for Standalone Evergreen Order Products

Create a monthly evergreen order product through API in Salesforce Lightning or Salesforce Classic.

Required Fields

Table 15: Product

Field	Value
Billing Frequency	Monthly, Quarterly, Semiannual, or Annual
Billing Rule	[Required]
Charge Type	Recurring
Revenue Recognition Rule	[Required]
Tax Rule	[Required]

EDITIONS

Available in: Salesforce Billing Winter '21 and later

Table 16: Order

Field	Value
Account	[Required]
Effective Date	[Required]
Price Book	[Required]
Status	Draft

Field	Value
Billable Unit Price	Required for invoice runs or Bill Now to pick up the order product for invoicing. We recommend calculating a value based on the formula described in Recurring Billing and Billable Unit Price.
Billing Frequency	Monthly
Billing Rule	Get value from product
Billing Type	[Required]
Charge Type	Recurring

Field	Value
Charge Type	[Required]
End Date	[Required]
Order	[Required]
Ordered Quantity	[Required]
Price Book Entry	[Required]
Product Subscription Type	Evergreen
Quantity	[Required]
Reference ID	[Required]
Revenue Recognition Rule	Get value from product
Service Date	[Required]
Status	Draft
Subscription Type	Evergreen
Tax Rule	Get value from product

```
"allOrNone" : true,
"compositeRequest" : [{
 "method" : "POST",
 "url" : "/services/data/v48.0/sobjects/order",
 "referenceId" : "refOrder",
 "body" : {
     "Status" : "Draft" ,
     "EffectiveDate" : "2020-06-16",
     "Pricebook2Id" : "Price records ID",
     "AccountId" : "Account records ID"}
 },{
 "method" : "POST",
 "url" : "/services/data/v48.0/sobjects/OrderItem",
 "referenceId" : "refOrderItem",
 "body" : {
   "Quantity" : "1",
   "Unitprice" : "50",
   "ServiceDate": "2020-06-16",
   "SBQQ__ProductSubscriptionType__c" : "*Evergreen*",
   "SBQQ__SubscriptionType__c" : "*Evergreen*",
    "SBQQ__ChargeType__c" : "Recurring",
   "SBQQ BillingType c": "Advance",
   "SBQQ BillingFrequency_c": "Monthly",
   "blng BillableUnitPrice c": "50",
    "SBQQ OrderedQuantity c": "1",
```

```
"SBQQ__DefaultSubscriptionTerm__c" : "1",
    "SBQQ__Status__c" : "Draft",
    "SBQQ__ContractAction__c" : "New"
    "PricebookEntryId" : "PricebookEntry records ID",
    "orderId" : "@{refOrder.id}"
    }
}]
```

Requirements for Standalone Invoice Plan Order Products

Create a standalone invoice plan order product through API in Salesforce Lightning or Salesforce Classic.

Salesforce Billing invoices standalone invoice plan order products only when the order product has a billing treatment with a New Order Invoice Plan value. You can configure your billing rules and legal entities so that Salesforce Billing assigns your order product a billing treatment. Or, you can create your order product, and then give it a billing treatment on your own.



Available in: Salesforce Billing Winter '21 and later

Required Fields

Table 17: Product

Field	Value
Billing Frequency	Invoice Plan
Billing Rule	[Required]
Charge Type	Recurring
Revenue Recognition Rule	[Required]
Tax Rule	[Required]

Table 18: Order

Field	Value
Account	[Required]
Effective Date	[Required]
Price Book	[Required]
Status	Draft

Table 19: Order Product

Field	Value
Billable Unit Price	When Enable Billing Order Validations is active, Salesforce Billing sets this value to zero for order products created with a billing frequency of Invoice Plan.
Billing Frequency	Invoice Plan
Billing Rule	[Required]
Billing Rule	Get value from product
Billing Treatment	[Must be a billing treatment with an active invoice plan]
Charge Type	Recurring
End Date	[Required]
Price Book Entry	[Required]
Quantity	[Required]
Revenue Recognition Rule	[Required]
Revenue Recognition Rule	[Get value from product]
Service Date	[Required]
Status	Draft
Tax Rule	[Required]
Tax Rule	[Get value from product]
Unit Price	[Required]

```
"allOrNone" : true,
"compositeRequest" : [{
 "method" : "POST",
 "url" : "/services/data/v48.0/sobjects/order",
 "referenceId" : "refOrder",
 "body" : {
     "Status" : "Draft" ,
     "EffectiveDate" : "2020-06-16",
     "Pricebook2Id" : "Price records ID",
     "AccountId" : "Account records ID"}
 },{
 "method" : "POST",
 "url" : "/services/data/v48.0/sobjects/OrderItem",
 "referenceId" : "refOrderItem",
 "body" : {
   "Quantity" : "1",
   "Unitprice" : "50",
```

```
"ServiceDate" : "2020-06-16",
   "EndDate" : "2021-06-15",
   "BillingTreatment _c" : "BillingTreatment records ID",
   "SBQQ_ChargeType__c" : "Recurring",
   "SBQQ_BillingType__c" : "Advance",
   "SBQQ_BillingFrequency__c" : "Monthly",
   "blng_BillableUnitPrice__c" : "50",
   "SBQQ_OrderedQuantity__c" : "1",
   "SBQQ_DefaultSubscriptionTerm__c" : "1",
   "SBQQ_Status__c" : "Draft",
   "SBQQ_ContractAction__c" : "New"
   "PricebookEntryId" : "PricebookEntry records ID",
   "orderId" : "@{refOrder.id}"
   }
}
```

Requirements for Standalone Amendment Order Products

Create a standalone amendment order product through API in Salesforce Lightning or Salesforce Classic

Make sure to provide a value for the revised order product ID. The Revised Order Product field shows the ID of the original order product used before any amendments were made. Remember, an order product can be related to multiple amendment order products.



Available in: Salesforce Billing Winter '21 and later

Required Fields

Table 20: Product

Field	Value
Billing Frequency	Invoice Plan
Billing Rule	[Required]
Charge Type	Recurring
Revenue Recognition Rule	[Required]
Tax Rule	[Required]

Table 21: Order

Field	Value
Account	[Required]
Effective Date	[Required]
Price Book	[Required]
Status	Draft

Table 22: Order Product

Field	Value
Billable Unit Price	Required for invoice runs or Bill Now to pick up the order product for invoicing. We recommend calculating a value based on the formula described in Recurring Billing and Billable Unit Price.
Billing Frequency	[Required]
Billing Rule	[Get value from product]
Billing Type	[Required]
Charge Type	[Required]
Charge Type	[Required]
Default Subscription Term	[Required]
End Date	[Required]
Order	[Required]
Ordered Quantity	[Required]
Price Book Entry	[Required]
Quantity	[Required]
Reference ID	[Required]
Revenue Recognition Rule	[Get value from product]
Revised Order Product	[Required]
Service Date	[Required]
Status	Draft
Tax Rule	[Get value from product]

Requirements for Standalone Cancellation Order Products

Create a standalone cancellation order product through API in Salesforce Lightning or Salesforce Classic

Salesforce Billing calculates canceled billings for a canceled standalone order product under the following settings.

EDITIONS

Available in: Salesforce Billing Winter '21 and later

- The cancellation order product has a Contract Action value of Cancel.
- The cancellation order product and related amendment order products all have a Revised Order Product field with the ID of the original order product used before any amendments or cancellations.
- The cancellation order products and related amendment order products all have the same terminated date. The Terminated Date must be the last field you populate on each order product before you activate the cancellation order product.
- Note: You can cancel standalone order products under both legacy cancellation and LIFO cancellation.

Section Title

Table 23: Product

Field	Value
Billing Frequency	Must match the value of the Revised Order Product field
Billing Rule	[Required]
Charge Type	Recurring
Revenue Recognition Rule	[Required]
Tax Rule	[Required]

Table 24: Order

Field	Value
Account	[Required]
Effective Date	[Required]
Price Book	[Required]
Status	Draft

Table 25: Order Product

Field	Value
Billing Frequency	Must match the value of the Revised Order Product field
Billing Rule	[Get value from product]
Billing Type	[Required]
Billable Unit Price	Required for invoice runs or Bill Now to pick up the order product for invoicing. We recommend calculating a value based on the formula described in Recurring Billing and Billable Unit Price.
Charge Type	Recurring
Contract Action	Cancel
Default Subscription Term	[Required]
End Date	[Required] for termed subscriptions, omit for evergreen subscriptions
Legal Entity	Must match the value of the Revised Order Product field
Order	[Required]
Ordered Quantity	Negative amount of the Revised Order Product field
Price Book Entry	Must match the value of the Revised Order Product field

Field	Value
Product Subscription Type	[Required]
Quantity	Negative amount of the Revised Order Product field
Revenue Recognition Rule	[Get value from product]
Revised Order Product	[ID number for the original order product used before any amendments]
Service Date	[Required]
Status	Draft
Subscription Type	[Required]
Tax Rule	[Get value from product]
Unit Price	[Required]
Terminated Date	[Set to the last day the canceled order product is billed]
	Terminated Date and Contract Action fields must be populated in a separate DML after the order product is created, all other required fields are populated, and the order product is activated.
	Terminated Date and Contract Action fields must be populated after the cancellation order product is created and activated. To do so:
	 Populate Terminated Date on the original order product (the one that is linked in the Revised Order Product field).
	 On the cancellation order product, populate Terminated Date and set Contract Action to Cancel.
	• Save.

```
{
"allOrNone" : true,
"compositeRequest" : [{
    "method" : "POST",
    "url" : "/services/data/v48.0/sobjects/order",
    "referenceId" : "refOrder",
    "body" : {
        "Status" : "Draft" ,
        "EffectiveDate" : "2020-06-16",
        "Pricebook2Id" : "Price records ID",
        "AccountId" : "Account records ID"}
},{
    "method" : "POST",
    "url" : "/services/data/v48.0/sobjects/OrderItem",
    "referenceId" : "refOrderItem",
    "body" : {
```

```
"Quantity" : "1",
   "Unitprice" : "1200",
   "ServiceDate" : "2020-06-16",
  "EndDate": "2021-06-15",
   "SBQQ ChargeType c" : "Recurring",
   "SBQQ BillingType c" : "Advance",
   "SBQQ__BillingFrequency__c" : "Monthly",
  "blng__BillableUnitPrice__c" : "100",
  "SBQQ OrderedQuantity c": "1",
   "SBQQ DefaultSubscriptionTerm c": "1",
   "SBQQ Status_c": "Draft",
  "PricebookEntryId" : "PricebookEntry records ID",
  "SBQQ RevisedOrderProduct c": "RevisedOrderProduct(original orderproduct) records
ID",
   "SBQQ TerminatedDate c": "2020-08-15",
   "SBQQ__ContractAction__c" : "Cancel",
   "orderId" : "@{refOrder.id}"
} ]
```

Requirements for Standalone Order Products with Consumption Schedules

Create a monthly order product with an order product consumption schedule and consumption rates through API in Salesforce Lightning or Salesforce Classic.

Available in: Salesforce
Billing Winter '21 and later

You must create the order, order product, order product consumption schedule, and at least one order product consumption rate. Your order product must be related to a product with a consumption schedule.

Salesforce Billing creates usage summaries when you activate an order product with the following configuration.

- The order product is related to a product with a consumption schedule.
- The order product has an active order product consumption schedule with at least one consumption rate.

Required Fields

Table 26: Product

Field	Value
Billing Frequency	Invoice Plan
Billing Rule	[Required]
Charge Type	Recurring
Revenue Recognition Rule	[Required]
Tax Rule	[Required]

Table 27: Order

Field	Value
Account	[Required]
Effective Date	[Required]
Price Book	[Required]
Status	Draft

Table 28: Order Product

Field	Value
Billable Unit Price	Required for invoice runs or Bill Now to pick up the order product for invoicing. We recommend calculating a value based on the formula described in Recurring Billing and Billable Unit Price.
Billing Frequency	[Required]
Billing Rule	[Get value from product]
Billing Type	[Required]
Charge Type	[Required]
Charge Type	[Required]
Default Subscription Term	[Required]
End Date	[Required]
Order	[Required]
Ordered Quantity	[Required]
Price Book Entry	[Required]
Quantity	[Required]
Reference ID	[Required]
Revenue Recognition Rule	[Get value from product]
Revised Order Product	[Required]
Service Date	[Required]
Status	Draft
Tax Rule	[Get value from product]

Table 29: Consumption Schedule

Field	Value
Billing Rule	[Required]

Field	Value
Billing Term	[Required]
Billing Term Unit	[Required]
Category	[Required]
Rating Method	[Required]
Revenue Recognition Rule	[Required]
Tax Rule	[Required]
Туре	[Required]

Table 30: Consumption Rates

Field	Value
Lower Bound	[Required]
Price	[Required]
Pricing Method	[Required]
Processing Order	[Required]
Upper Bound	[Optional]

Table 31: Order Product Consumption Schedule

Field	Value
Billing Rule	[Required]
Billing Term	[Required]
Billing Term Unit	[Required]
Category	[Required]
Consumption Schedule	[Optional]
Order Product	[Required]
Rating Method	[Required]
Revenue Recognition Rule	[Required]
Tax Rule	[Required]
Туре	[Required]

Field	Value
Lower Bound	[Required]

Field	Value
Order Product Consumption Schedule	[Required]
Price	[Required]
Pricing Method	[Required]
Processing Order	[Required]
Upper Bound	[Optional]

```
"allOrNone" : true,
"compositeRequest" : [{
 "method" : "POST",
 "url" : "/services/data/v48.0/sobjects/order",
 "referenceId" : "refOrder",
 "body" : {
     "Status" : "Draft" ,
     "EffectiveDate" : "2020-06-16",
     "Pricebook2Id" : "Price records ID",
     "AccountId" : "Account records ID"}
 },{
 "method" : "POST",
 "url" : "/services/data/v48.0/sobjects/OrderItem",
 "referenceId" : "refOrderItem",
 "body" : {
   "Quantity" : "1",
   "Unitprice" : "1200",
   "ServiceDate": "2020-06-16",
   "EndDate": "2021-06-15",
   "SBQQ__ChargeType__c" : "Recurring",
   "SBQQ BillingType c": "Advance",
   "SBQQ BillingFrequency c": "Monthly",
   "blng__BillableUnitPrice__c" : "100",
    "SBQQ OrderedQuantity c": "1",
    "SBQQ__DefaultSubscriptionTerm__c" : "1",
   "SBQQ Status c" : "Draft",
   "PricebookEntryId" : "PricebookEntry records ID",
   "SBQQ ContractAction c": "New",
    "orderId" : "@{refOrder.id}"
   }
 },
 "method" : "POST",
 "url": "/services/data/v48.0/sobjects/SBQQ OrderItemConsumptionSchedule c",
 "referenceId" : "refOrderItemConsumptionSchedule",
   "SBQQ RatingMethod c": "Tier",
   \verb"SBQQ ConsumptionSchedule\_c": "ConsumptionSchedule record ID",\\
    "SBQQ BillingTermUnit_c": "Month",
```

```
"SBQQ BillingTerm c": "1",
       "SBQQ Type c": "Range/Slab",
       "SBQQ__Category__c" : "Rates",
       "blng BillingRule c" : "BillingRule record ID",
       "blng RevenueRecognitionRule c": "RevenueRecognitionRule record ID",
       "blng TaxRule c" : "TaxRule record ID",
       "SBQQ__OrderItem__c" : "@{refOrderItem.id}"
       }
},{
"method" : "POST",
"url": "/services/data/v48.0/sobjects/SBQQ OrderItemConsumptionRate c",
"referenceId" : "refOrderItemConsumptionRate",
"body" : {
       "SBQQ ProcessingOrder c": "1",
       "SBQQ LowerBound c": "1",
       "SBQQ__UpperBound__c" : "100 or null",
       "SBQQ__Price__c" : "100",
       "SBQQ PricingMethod c": "Per Unit/ Flat Fee",
       \verb"SBQQ\_OrderItemConsumptionSchedule\_c": "@\{refOrderItemConsumptionSchedule.id\}" = (a.id) = 
       }
} ]
```

Requirements for Standalone Order Products with Price Schedules

Create a standalone order product with price schedules through API in Salesforce Lightning or Salesforce Classic.

EDITIONS

(1) Important: Salesforce CPQ doesn't automatically create price schedules for standalone order products. You must create the price schedule and its price tiers on your own. Each price schedule requires at least one price tier.

Available in: Salesforce Billing Winter '21 and later

Required Fields

Table 32: Product

Field	Value
Billing Frequency	Invoice Plan
Billing Rule	[Required]
Charge Type	Recurring
Revenue Recognition Rule	[Required]
Tax Rule	[Required]

Ta	1. 1		-	•	\sim	1		
ıа	n	9	≺.	٠٠	()	ra	e۲	

Field	Value
Account	[Required]
Effective Date	[Required]
Price Book	[Required]
Status	Draft

Table 34: Order Product

Field	Value
Billing Frequency	[Required]
Charge Type	Usage
End Date	[Required]
Price Book Entry	[Required]
Price Schedule	[Required]
Quantity	[Required]
Service Date	[Required]
Unit Price	[Required]

Table 35: Price Schedule

Field	Value
Discount Unit	[Required]
Price Type	[Required]

Table 36: Price Tier

Field	Value
Lower Bound	[Required]
Optional	[Optional]
Price Model	[Required]
Price Schedule	[Required]

Salesforce Billing Apex Reference

Salesforce Billing provides the blng namespace that contains classes to manage credit applications.

InvoiceAPI Class

Global API Apex class for Salesforce Billing. Contains methods that you can call to cancel and rebill an invoice, or to credit an invoice.

InvoiceAPI Class

Global API Apex class for Salesforce Billing. Contains methods that you can call to cancel and rebill an invoice, or to credit an invoice.

Namespace

blng

Usage

The InvoiceAPI class contains the creditInvoice method, which can be used to cancel and rebill an invoice, or to credit an invoice for a specified invoice ID.

InvoiceAPI Methods

Learn more about the methods available with the InvoiceAPI class.

InvoiceAPI Methods

Learn more about the methods available with the InvoiceAPI class.

The InvoiceAPI class includes these methods.

creditInvoice(invoiceId, action)

Use this method to cancel or rebill an invoice, or to credit an invoice.

creditInvoice(invoiceId, action)

Use this method to cancel or rebill an invoice, or to credit an invoice.

Signature

```
global static String creditInvoice(Id invoiceId, String action)
```

Parameters

```
invoiceId
```

Type: String

ID of the invoice.

action

Type: String

Action to perform against the invoice. For example, Credit or Cancel and Rebill.

Valid values are:

Credit—The invoice must be in the Posted status.

Cancel and Rebill—

If the invoice is in Posted status, then this action creates a credit note equal to the invoice's total balance. The credit note contains credit note lines that are allocated in full to each of the invoice lines. This action also reverts the billing fields of an order product to their previous values. The status of the invoice is changed to Rebilled.

If the invoice is in Draft status, then Salesforce Billing sets the status to Cancelled for the invoice and all invoice lines. This action also sets the Invoice Run Processing Status field of the order products to Pending Billing status.

See Cancel and Rebill an Invoice.

Return Value

Type: String

Usage

Keep these considerations in mind when using this method.

- The invoice must not have any allocations before the credit invoice action is requested.
- The associated CreditNote, CreditNoteLine, and CreditNoteAllocation records are created against the posted invoice for both Credit and Cancel and Rebill actions. The status of the invoice is changed to Credited.

For more information about Cancel and Rebill, as well as Credit actions, see Issuing Credits.

```
blng.InvoiceAPI.creditInvoice('aF15t000000GmjKCAS', 'Cancel and Rebill');
blng.InvoiceAPI.creditInvoice('aF15t000000GmjKCAS', 'Credit');
```

INDEX

В	Classes (continued)		
blng	System.CaptureInputParameter 381		
namespace 355, 374, 385, 434, 456, 458, 512	System.CaptureOutputResult 383		
blng.PaymentGateway	System.HostedPaymentPageTransactionAPI 487, 513		
interfaces 388	System.InputParameter 386		
blng.PaymentGatewayParameter	System.OutputResult 387		
classes 392	E		
blng.PaymentGateways	_		
interfaces 391	Enums		
blng.PaymentGatewayStatus	blng.TransactionResult.GatewayStatusType 433		
interfaces 393	1		
blng.TaxEngines			
interfaces 467	Interfaces		
blng.TaxParameters	blng.PaymentGateway 388		
classes 458	blng.PaymentGateways 391		
blng.TaxResults	blng.PaymentGatewayStatus 393		
classes 463	blng.TaxEngines 467		
blng.TransactionAPI	N		
classes 394	• •		
blng.TransactionParameter	Namespaces		
classes 402	blng 355, 374, 385, 434, 456, 458, 512		
blng.TransactionResult	S		
classes 419			
blng.TransactionResult.GatewayStatusType enum 433	System.CaptureInputParameter		
	classes 381		
C	System.CaptureOutputResult		
Classes	classes 383		
blng.PaymentGatewayParameter 392	System.HostedPaymentPageTransactionAPI		
blng.TaxParameters 458	classes 487, 513		
blng.TaxResults 463	System.InputParameter classes 386 System.OutputResult		
blng.TransactionAPI 394			
blng.TransactionParameter 402			
blng.TransactionResult 419	classes 387		